4.
Order Entry

Chapter Chair/Editor:	Clement J. McDonald, MD Regenstrief Institute and Indiana University School of Medicine
Chapter Chair/Editor:	Hans Buitendijk Siemens Medical Solutions Health Services
Chapter Chair/Editor:	Gunther Schadow The Regenstrief Institute for Health Care
Chapter Chair/Editor:	Helen Stevens McKesson Information Solutions
Chapter Chair/Editor:	Austin Kreisler McKesson Information Solutions
Editor	Scott Robertson Kaiser Permanente

4.1 CHAPTER 4 CONTENTS

4.1 CHAPTER 4 CONTENTS 4-1

4.2 PURPOSE 4-4

4.2.1 PREFACE (ORGANIZATION OF THIS CHAPTER) 4-4
4.2.2 GLOSSARY 4-5

4.3 QUANTITY/TIMING (TQ) DATA TYPE DEFINITION 4-6

4.4 GENERAL TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS 4-6

4.4.1 ORM - GENERAL ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O01) 4-6
4.4.2 ORR - GENERAL ORDER RESPONSE MESSAGE RESPONSE TO ANY ORM (EVENT O02) 4-8
4.4.3 OSQ/OSR- QUERY RESPONSE FOR ORDER STATUS (EVENT Q06) 4-9
4.4.4 OMG - GENERAL CLINICAL ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O19) 4-10
4.4.5 ORG - GENERAL CLINICAL ORDER ACKNOWLEDGEMENT MESSAGE (EVENT O20) 4-13
4.4.6 OML - LABORATORY ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O21) 4-14
4.4.7 ORL - GENERAL LABORATORY ORDER RESPONSE MESSAGE TO ANY OML (EVENT O22) 4-17
4.4.8 OML – LABORATORY ORDER FOR MULTIPLE ORDERS RELATED TO A SINGLE SPECIMEN (EVENT O33) 4-18
4.4.9 ORL – LABORATORY ORDER RESPONSE MESSAGE TO A MULTIPLE ORDER RELATED TO SINGLE SPECIMEN OML (EVENT O34) 4-20
4.4.10 OML – LABORATORY ORDER FOR MULTIPLE ORDERS RELATED TO A SINGLE CONTAINER OF A SPECIMEN (EVENT O35) 4-21

4.4.11 ORL – LABORATORY ORDER RESPONSE MESSAGE TO A SINGLE CONTAINER OF A SPECIMEN OML (EVENT O36) 4-24
4.4.12 OMI – IMAGING ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O23) 4-25
4.4.13 ORI - IMAGING ORDER RESPONSE MESSAGE TO ANY OMI (EVENT O24) 4-27

4.5 GENERAL SEGMENTS 4-28

4.5.1 ORC - COMMON ORDER SEGMENT 4-28
4.5.2 BLG - BILLING SEGMENT 4-51
4.5.3 OBR - OBSERVATION REQUEST SEGMENT 4-52
4.5.4 TQ1 – TIMING/QUANTITY SEGMENT 4-71
4.5.5 TQ2 – TIMING/QUANTITY RELATIONSHIP 4-76
4.5.6 IPC – IMAGING PROCEDURE CONTROL SEGMENT 4-80

4.6 GENERAL MESSAGE EXAMPLES 4-86

4.6.1 AN ORDER REPLACED BY THREE ORDERS 4-86
4.6.2 ORDERING NON-MEDICAL SERVICES 4-88

4.7 DIET TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS 4-95

4.7.1 OMD - DIETARY ORDER (EVENT O03) 4-95
4.7.2 ORD - DIETARY ORDER ACKNOWLEDGMENT (EVENT O04) 4-96

4.8 DIET SEGMENTS 4-98

4.8.1 ODS - DIETARY ORDERS, SUPPLEMENTS, AND PREFERENCES SEGMENT 4-98
4.8.2 ODT - DIET TRAY INSTRUCTIONS SEGMENT 4-99

4.9 DIET MESSAGE EXAMPLES 4-100

4.9.1 TYPICAL PROGRESSION OF ORDERS FOR A SURGERY PATIENT 4-100
4.9.2 COMPLEX ORDER 4-102
4.9.3 TUBE FEEDING 4-102
4.9.4 PATIENT PREFERENCE 4-103

4.10 SUPPLY TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGES 4-103

4.10.1 OMS - STOCK REQUISITION ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O05) 4-103
4.10.2 ORS - STOCK REQUISITION ORDER ACKNOWLEDGMENT MESSAGE (EVENT O06) 4-104
4.10.3 OMN - NON-STOCK REQUISITION ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O07) 4-105
4.10.4 ORN - NON-STOCK REQUISITION ORDER ACKNOWLEDGMENT MESSAGE (EVENT O08) 4-106

4.11 SUPPLY SEGMENTS 4-107

4.11.1 RQD - REQUISITION DETAIL SEGMENT 4-107
4.11.2 RQ1 - REQUISITION DETAIL-1 SEGMENT 4-109

4.12 SUPPLY MESSAGE EXAMPLES 4-111

4.12.1 PATIENT ORDER 4-111
4.12.2 REPLENISH SUPPLY CLOSET 4-111

4.13 PHARMACY/TREATMENT TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGES 4-112

4.13.1 USAGE NOTES FOR PHARMACY/TREATMENT MESSAGES 4-112
4.13.2 IV SOLUTION GROUPS 4-113
4.13.3 OMP - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O09) 4-113
4.13.4 ORP - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ORDER ACKNOWLEDGMENT (EVENT O10) 4-114
4.13.5 RDE - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ENCODED ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O11) 4-115
4.13.6 RRE - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ENCODED ORDER ACKNOWLEDGMENT (EVENT O12) 4-117
4.13.7 RDS - PHARMACY/TREATMENT DISPENSE MESSAGE (EVENT O13) 4-118
4.13.8 RRD - PHARMACY/TREATMENT DISPENSE ACKNOWLEDGEMENT MESSAGE (EVENT O14) 4-121
4.13.9 RGV - PHARMACY/TREATMENT GIVE MESSAGE (EVENT O15) 4-121

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.13.10 RRG - PHARMACY/TREATMENT GIVE ACKNOWLEDGMENT MESSAGE (EVENT O16) 4-123
4.13.11 RAS - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ADMINISTRATION MESSAGE (EVENT O17) 4-124
4.13.12 RRA - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ADMINISTRATION ACKNOWLEDGMENT MESSAGE (EVENT O18) 4-126
4.13.13 RDE - PHARMACY/TREATMENT REFILL AUTHORIZATION REQUEST MESSAGE (EVENT O25) 4-127
4.13.14 RRE - PHARMACY/TREATMENT REFILL AUTHORIZATION REQUEST ACKNOWLEDGMENT (EVENT O26) 4-129
4.13.15 ROR - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ORDER RESPONSE (EVENT Q26) 4-130
4.13.16 RAR - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ADMINISTRATION INFORMATION (EVENT Q27) 4-130
4.13.17 RDR - PHARMACY/TREATMENT DISPENSE INFORMATION (EVENT Q28) 4-131
4.13.18 RER - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ENCODED ORDER INFORMATION (EVENT Q29) 4-133
4.13.19 RGR - PHARMACY/TREATMENT DOSE INFORMATION (EVENT Q30) 4-134
4.13.20 PHARMACY QUERY/RESPONSE MESSAGE PAIR 4-135

4.14 PHARMACY/TREATMENT SEGMENTS 4-139

4.14.1 RXO - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ORDER SEGMENT 4-139
4.14.2 RXR - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ROUTE SEGMENT 4-148
4.14.3 RXC - PHARMACY/TREATMENT COMPONENT ORDER SEGMENT 4-151
4.14.4 RXE - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ENCODED ORDER SEGMENT 4-154
4.14.5 RXD - PHARMACY/TREATMENT DISPENSE SEGMENT 4-166
4.14.6 RXG - PHARMACY/TREATMENT GIVE SEGMENT 4-174
4.14.7 RXA - PHARMACY/TREATMENT ADMINISTRATION SEGMENT 4-180

4.15 PHARMACY/TREATMENT MESSAGE EXAMPLES 4-186

4.15.1 EXAMPLE OF VARIOUS LEVELS OF CODING IN AN ORDER 4-186
4.15.2 RXO SEGMENT FIELD EXAMPLES 4-188
4.15.3 RXD SEGMENT FIELD EXAMPLES 4-189
4.15.4 RDS WITH FT1 SEGMENTS EXAMPLE 4-189
4.15.5 ALTERNATING IV ORDER MESSAGES 4-190
4.15.6 QUERY EXAMPLES 4-195

4.16 PHARMACY/TREATMENT TRANSACTION FLOW DIAGRAM 4-197

4.16.1 OMP: 4-197
4.16.2 RDE: 4-197
4.16.3 RDS: 4-197
4.16.4 RGV: 4-197
4.16.5 RAS: 4-198

4.17 VACCINE TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS 4-198

4.17.1 VACCINE ADMINISTRATION DATA 4-198
4.17.2 QUERIES FOR IMMUNIZATION RECORDS (QRF SEGMENTS) 4-198
4.17.3 VXQ - QUERY FOR VACCINATION RECORD (EVENT V01) 4-199
4.17.4 VXX - RESPONSE TO VACCINATION QUERY RETURNING MULTIPLE PID MATCHES (EVENT V02) 4-200
4.17.5 VXR - VACCINATION RECORD RESPONSE (EVENT V03) 4-200
4.17.6 VXU - UNSOLICITED VACCINATION RECORD UPDATE (EVENT V04) 4-201

4.18 VACCINE SEGMENTS 4-202

4.18.1 RXA - SEGMENT USAGE IN VACCINE MESSAGES 4-202

4.19 VACCINATION MESSAGE EXAMPLES 4-204

4.19.1 VXQ - QUERY FOR VACCINATION RECORD 4-204
4.19.2 VXX - RESPONSE TO VACCINATION QUERY WITH MULTIPLE PID MATCHES 4-204
4.19.3 VXR - VACCINATION RECORD RESPONSE 4-205
4.19.4 VXU - UNSOLICITED VACCINATION RECORD UPDATE 4-206
4.19.5 QUERY ACKNOWLEDGMENT WITH NO RECORDS FOUND 4-206

4.20 TRANSFUSION SERVICE (BLOOD BANK) TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGES 4-206

4.20.1 USAGE NOTES FOR TRANSFUSION SERVICE MESSAGES 4-206
4.20.2 OMB – BLOOD PRODUCT ORDER MESSAGE (EVENT O27) 4-206
4.20.3 ORB – BLOOD PRODUCT ORDER ACKNOWLEDGMENT (EVENT O28) 4-208
4.20.4 BPS – BLOOD PRODUCT DISPENSE STATUS MESSAGE (EVENT O29) 4-209
4.20.5 BRP – BLOOD PRODUCT DISPENSE STATUS ACKNOWLEDGMENT (EVENT O30) 4-210
4.20.6 BTS – BLOOD PRODUCT TRANSFUSION/DISPOSITION MESSAGE (EVENT O31) 4-210
4.20.7 BRT – BLOOD PRODUCT TRANSFUSION/DISPOSITION ACKNOWLEDGMENT (EVENT O32) 4-211

4.21 TRANSFUSION SERVICE (BLOOD BANK) SEGMENTS 4-212

4.21.1 BPO – BLOOD PRODUCT ORDER SEGMENT 4-212
4.21.2 BPX – BLOOD PRODUCT DISPENSE STATUS SEGMENT 4-216
4.21.3 BTX – BLOOD PRODUCT TRANSFUSION/DISPOSITION SEGMENT 4-224

4.22 TRANSFUSION SERVICE (BLOOD BANK) TRANSACTION FLOW DIAGRAM 4-231

4.23 TABLES LISTINGS 4-235

4.23.1 HL7 TABLE 0119 - ORDER CONTROL CODES 4-235
4.23.2 HL7 TABLE 0292 – VACCINES ADMINISTERED 4-241
4.23.3 HL7 TABLE 0227 - MANUFACTURERS OF VACCINES (CODE=MVX) 4-244
4.23.4 HL7 TABLE 0495 – BODY PART MODIFIER 4-246
4.23.5 HL7 TABLE 0550 – BODY PARTS 4-246

4.24 OUTSTANDING ISSUES 4-255

4.2 PURPOSE

The Order Entry transaction set provides for the transmission of orders or information about orders between applications that capture the order, by those that fulfill the order, and other applications as needed. An order is a request for material or services, usually for a specific patient. These services include medications from the pharmacy, clinical observations (e.g., vitals, I&Os) from the nursing service, tests in the laboratory, food from dietary, films from radiology, linens from housekeeping, supplies from central supply, an order to give a medication (as opposed to delivering it to the ward), etc.

Most orders are associated with a particular patient. However, the Standard also allows a department to order from another ancillary department without regard to a patient (e.g., floor stock), as well as orders originating in an ancillary department (i.e., any application may be the placer of an order or the filler of an order).

We refer to the person or entity who places the order as the placer. We refer to the person or entity that carries out the order as the filler (producer in ASTM terminology). In the case where the person or entity that carries out the order also requests the order, this person or entity is referred to as the filler and placer of the order. The filler may also request another application to assign a filler or placer order number.

This chapter defines the transactions at the seventh level, i.e., the abstract messages. Various schemes may be used to generate the actual characters that make up the messages according to the communications environment. The HL7 Encoding Rules will be used where there is not a complete Presentation Layer. This is described in Chapter 2, Section 2.6, "Message construction rules." The examples included in this chapter were constructed according to the HL7 Encoding Rules.

4.2.1 Preface (organization of this chapter)

This chapter has been organized into six major sections, General, Diet, Supply, Pharmacy, Vaccine and Transfusion Services. Each section contains the trigger events, message definitions, segments and examples for the specific type of order messages. Each section about a type of order is organized into background and overview, message structure, and message segments (that are specific to the order class in

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

question). Special discussions of the use of fields, segments or messages, and examples are included. Segments are introduced in order of occurrence in a message. A list of allowable values for a field is included in the body of the text, along with the field definition for easier reference.

Section 4.3 refers the reader to Chapter 2 for an outline of the Quantity Timing (TQ) Data Type Definition.

Sections 4.4 to 4.6 'General' includes the triggers and segments for the clinical observations and diagnostic studies as well as the triggers and message segments that are common to all of the order entry messages. Orders for laboratory tests, bedside monitoring, diagnostic imaging, electrocardiograms, vital signs, etc., are subsumed under this order message set.

Sections 4.7 to 4.9 'Diet' includes all of the usual diet specifications including snacks and guest trays

Sections 4.10 to 4.12 'Supply' includes order messages for both Stock and No-stock orders. Supply orders are different in that they often are not patient-centered (e.g., requests to stock the ward supply room).

Sections 4.13 to 4.16 'Pharmacy / Treatment' includes all pharmacy and treatment related order messages. These sections additionally include triggers related to the dispensing, giving and administration of orders. In the development of the treatment order transaction set, the focus has been on medication treatments, but the same transaction set works well for total parenteral nutrition (TPN). There is hope that it is also sufficient for other kinds of treatment orders, such as those performed by the nursing service. But it has not yet been exercised in that context and may well need further development.

Sections 4.17 to 4.19 'Vaccine' includes triggers and segments specific to vaccination order messages. These sections also include RXA definitions specific to vaccination messages.

Sections 4.20 to 4.22 “Transfusion Service (Blood Bank)” includes triggers and segments specific to transfusion service messages.

4.2.2 Glossary

4.2.2.1 Filler:

The application responding to, i.e., performing, a request for services (orders) or producing an observation. The filler can also originate requests for services (new orders), add additional services to existing orders, replace existing orders, put an order on hold, discontinue an order, release a held order, or cancel existing orders

4.2.2.2 Observation segment:

An OBX segment defined in Chapter 7.

4.2.2.3 Order:

A request for a service from one application to a second application. The second application may in some cases be the same; i.e., an application is allowed to place orders with itself.

4.2.2.4 Order detail segment:

One of several segments that can carry order information. Examples are OBR and RXO. Future ancillary-specific segments may be defined in subsequent releases of the Standard if they become necessary.

4.2.2.5 Placer:

The application or individual originating a request for services (order).

4.2.2.6 Placer order group:

A list of associated orders coming from a single location regarding a single patient.

4.3 QUANTITY/TIMING (TQ) DATA TYPE DEFINITION

Note: With version 2.5, the definition and narrative for the *TQ – Quantity/Timing* data type has been moved to Chapter 2, Section 2.A.81. This section retained in v2.5 to maintain consistent section numbering for reference from other chapters.

4.4 GENERAL TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS

This section includes trigger events and message definitions that are general to all orders in addition to the Observation and Diagnostic Study.

4.4.1 ORM - general order message (event O01)

Left for backward compatibility only. *It is recommended that the trigger events OMG, OML, OMD, OMS, OMN, OMI, and OMP be used instead when communicating orders and order related events.*

The function of this message is to initiate the transmission of information about an order. This includes placing new orders, cancellation of existing orders, discontinuation, holding, etc. ORM messages can originate also with a placer, filler, or an interested third party.

The trigger event for this message is any change to an order. Such changes include submission of new orders, cancellations, updates, patient and non-patient specific orders, etc.

The CTD segment in this trigger is used to transmit temporary patient contact details specific to this order.

ORM^O01^ORM_O01	General Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit- Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORM^O01^ORM_O01	General Order Message	Status	Chapter
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info – Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL begin		
<OBR|	Order Detail Segment OBR, etc.		4
RQD|			
RQ1|			
RXO|			
ODS|			
ODT>			
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[CTD]	Contact Data		11
[{ DG1 }]	Diagnosis		6
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Results)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Transaction		6
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
[BLG]	Billing Segment		4
}	--- ORDER end		

4.4.1.1 ORM use notes

a) The abstract message syntax for some order segments vary slightly. Please refer to the appropriate sections for specific examples: for supply orders (RQ), see Section *4.10* "*Supply Trigger Events & Messages*" for pharmacy, see Section *4.13* "*Pharmacy/Treatment Trigger Events & Messages*"; and for dietary orders, see Section *4.7*, "*Diet Trigger Events & Message Definitions*".

b) The segment named "Order Detail Segment" represents whichever of these order detail segment(s) is appropriate to the message, currently OBR, RQD, RQ1, RXO, ODS, ODT.

c) The NTE segment(s) can be included in the ORM message in four places; in each place the NTE refers to the segment which it follows. In particular, the NTEs following the MSH refer only to the message header, the NTEs following the order detail segment apply to the service defined by that

ORC and order detail segment.

d) The PID segment is required if and only if new orders are being entered and they are related to a particular patient. For nonpatient-related orders the PID segment is never included.

e) The optional PV1 segment is present mainly to permit transmission of patient visit information such as current location with an order.

f) The order detail segments are not required when a simple control message is being sent. For example, a hold message (*ORC-1-order control* = HD) does not require that an order segment follow it.

g) *ORC-1-order control* is critical to the operation of both ORM and ORR messages. For example, to request cancellation of an order, one would transmit a CA in *ORC-1-order control* of the appropriate ORC. (See the definition of *ORC-1-order control*.)

h) A method to inquire for order status in the display format is provided in Chapter 2, and uses the record format provided in Chapter 7.

i) Each order message that defines any type of new order (*ORC-1-order control* = NW, CH, RO, or SN) requires an ORC/OBR pair to define each order to the receiving application. This also applies to any other types of orders, with the OBR being replaced by the appropriate order detail segment, as defined below. Thus two consecutive ORCs could occur if a cancel order request (needing only the order numbers) were followed by a second cancel order request. Many other examples are possible.

j) The insurance segments (IN1, IN2, and GT1) are typically used for external fillers, e.g., reference labs, where formal ADT transactions are overly complex or not needed.

4.4.2 ORR - general order response message response to any ORM (event O02)

Left for backward compatibility only. *It is recommended that the trigger events ORG, ORL, ORD, ORS, ORN, ORI, and ORP be used instead when communicating orders and order related events.*

The function of this message is to respond to an ORM message. An ORR message is the application acknowledgment to an ORM message. See Chapter 2 for a description of the acknowledgment paradigm.

In ORR the PID and ORC segments are optional, particularly in case of an error response. However, ORC segments are always required in ORR when an order detail segment is present. For example, a response ORR might include only the MSH and MSA, but if a RQ1 is present, it must be preceded by an ORC.

The function (e.g., cancel, new order) of both ORM and ORR messages is determined by the value in *ORC-1-order control*. (See the table of order control values for a complete list.)

ORR^O02^ORR_O02	General Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORR^O02^ORR_O02	General Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
<OBR|	[Order Detail Segment] OBR, etc.		4
RQD|			
RQ1|			
RXO|			
ODS|			
ODT>			
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

Note: ORRs for supply, pharmacy, and dietary orders all have slightly different message syntax; refer to the appropriate sections as detailed in Section 4.4.1.1, ORM use notes, for exact details.

4.4.3 OSQ/OSR- query response for order status (event Q06)

OSQ^Q06^OSQ_Q06	Order Status Query	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
QRD	Query Definition		2
[QRF]	Query Filter		2
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

OSR^Q06^OSR_Q06	Order Status Response	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
QRD	Query Definition		2
[QRF]	Query Filter		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3

OSR^Q06^OSR_Q06	Order Status Response	Status	Chapter
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
<OBR|	[Order Detail Segment] OBR, etc.		4
RQD|			
RQ1|			
RXO|			
ODS|			
ODT>			
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

4.4.3.1 Query usage notes

The QRD and QRF segments are defined in Chapter 2, Section 2.15, "Message Control Segments."

The subject filters contained in the QRD and QRF segments describe the kind of information that is required to satisfy the request. They are defined by local agreement between the inquiring system and the ancillary system. See the Implementation Guide for detailed examples of the use of query filter fields.

The Set ID fields in the various segments (including PID) are used to count the number of segments of one kind transmitted at one level of the hierarchy.

The Query Result Level field of the QRD determines the amount of data requested. See Chapter 5, Section 5.10.5.3, "QRD - original style query definition segment."

The OSQ message is a record-oriented query that has the structure as the regular QRY message. OSQ is included here for the convenience of implementers.

4.4.4 OMG - general clinical order message (event O19)

The function of this message is to initiate the transmission of information about a general clinical order that uses the OBR segment. Messages using the ORM message with the OBR segment are supported for backward compatibility. This includes placing new orders, cancellation of existing orders, discontinuation, holding, etc. OMG messages can originate also with a placer, filler, or an interested third party.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

The trigger event for this message is any change to a general clinical order. Such changes include submission of new orders, cancellations, updates, patient and non-patient-specific orders, etc.

This trigger includes segments identified as being for 'previous results'. These segments allow the sending system to include demographic and/or result information from previous result reports when they are related to the current order.

For example:

- Diagnostic laboratories referring tests to another lab for either confirmation of results (HIV, etc.) or due to not being equipped to do the tests (genetic testing, etc.).
- Diagnostic laboratories sending test results to Knowledge Bases for the automated generation of diagnostic comments for inclusion into the lab report.

The CTD segment in this trigger is used to transmit temporary patient contact details specific to this order.

OMG^O19^OMG_O19	General Clinical Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[{ NK1 }]	Next of Kin/Associated Parties		3
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit- Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		

OMG^O19^OMG_O19	General Clinical Order Message	Status	Chapter
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
OBR	Observation		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[CTD]	Contact Data		11
[{ DG1 }]	Diagnosis		6
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Results)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[{	--- SPECIMEN begin		
SPM	Specimen		7
[{ OBX }]	Observation/Result		7
[{	--- CONTAINER begin		
SAC	Specimen Container		13
[{ OBX }]	Observation/Result		7
}]	--- CONTAINER end		
}]	--- SPECIMEN end		
[{	--- PRIOR_RESULT begin		
[	--- PATIENT_PRIOR begin		
PID	Patient Identification – previous result		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics – previous result		3
]	--- PATIENT_PRIOR end		
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT_PRIOR begin		
PV1	Patient Visit – previous result		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit Add. Info – previous result		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT_PRIOR end		
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information - previous result		3
{	--- ORDER_PRIOR begin		
[ORC]	Common Order - previous result		4
OBR	Order Detail - previous result		4
[{	--- TIMING_PRIOR begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

OMG^O19^OMG_O19	General Clinical Order Message	Status	Chapter
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING_PRIOR end		
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments - previous result		2
[CTD]	Contact Data - previous result		10
{	--- OBSERVATION_PRIOR begin		
OBX	Observation/Result - previous result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments - previous result		2
}	--- OBSERVATION_PRIOR end		
}	--- ORDER_PRIOR end		
}]	--- PRIOR_RESULT end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Transaction		6
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
[BLG]	Billing Segment		4
}	--- ORDER end		

4.4.5 ORG - general clinical order acknowledgement message (event O20)

The function of this message is to respond to an OMG message. An ORG message is the application acknowledgment to an OMG message. See Chapter 2 for a description of the acknowledgment paradigm.

In ORG the PID and ORC segments are optional, particularly in case of an error response. However, ORC segments are always required in ORG when the OBR is present. For example, a response ORG might include only the MSH and MSA.

The function (e.g., cancel, new order) of both OMG and ORG messages is determined by the value in *ORC-1-order control*. (See the table of order control values for a complete list.)

ORG^O20^ORG_O20	General Clinical Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		

ORG^O20^ORG_O20		General Clinical Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
	ORC	Common Order		4
[{		--- TIMING begin		
	TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
	[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]		--- TIMING end		
[	OBR]	Observation		4
[{	NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[{	CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
[{		--- SPECIMEN begin		
	SPM	Specimen		7
	[{ SAC }]	Specimen Container Details		13
}]		--- SPECIMEN end		
}		--- ORDER end		
]		--- RESPONSE end		

4.4.6 OML - laboratory order message (event O21)

The following message structure may be used for the communication of laboratory and other order messages and must be used for lab automation messages where it is required that the Specimen/Container information is within the ORC/OBR segment group. While the ORM message with the OBR segment can be used for backwards compatibility for general lab messages, only the OML message should be used to take advantage of the specimen and container extensions required in laboratory automation.

The trigger event for this message is any change to a laboratory order. Such changes include submission of new orders, cancellations, updates, etc. OML messages can originate also with a placer, filler, or an interested third party.

Note: The additional patient information (the segments PID, PD1, PV1, PV2, etc, which are sent after the OBR with the current order (indicated below with words "previous result"), could have been transferred with the previous result, because the patient demographics related to the previous result can differ from the demographics related to the current order. The current intent is to only allow references to the same patient as in the header PID.

The SAC segments included in the message allow the transfer of, e.g.: a laboratory order with multiple containers and multiple test orders related to each container, or laboratory orders with test order requiring multiple containers.

Refer to Chapter 13 Laboratory Automation for examples of usage, particularly to clarify the use of two references to SAC segments in this one message.

The CTD segment in this trigger is used to transmit temporary patient contact details specific to this order.

In relationship to triggers O21, O33, and O35, this message/trigger (O21) should be used where an order with multiple samples and optionally multiple containers per order item are to be communicated.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

OML^O21^OML_O21	Laboratory Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[{ NK1 }]	Next of Kin/Associated Parties		3
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit- Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST begin		
OBR	Observation Request		4
[TCD]	Test Code Details		13
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[CTD]	Contact Data		11
[{ DG1 }]	Diagnosis		6
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7

OML^O21^OML_O21	Laboratory Order Message	Status	Chapter
[TCD]	Test Code Detail		13
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Results)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[{	--- SPECIMEN begin		
SPM	Specimen		7
[{ OBX }]	Observation/Result related to specimen		7
[{	--- CONTAINER begin		
SAC	Specimen Container		13
[{ OBX }]	Observation/Result related to container		7
}]	--- CONTAINER end		
}]	--- SPECIMEN end		
[{	--- PRIOR_RESULT begin		
[	--- PATIENT_PRIOR begin		
PID	Patient Identification – previous result		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics – previous result		3
]	--- PATIENT_PRIOR end		
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT_PRIOR begin		
PV1	Patient Visit – previous result		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit Add. Info – previous result		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT_PRIOR end		
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information - previous result		3
{	--- ORDER_PRIOR begin		
[ORC]	Common Order - previous result		4
OBR	Order Detail - previous result		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments - previous result		2
[{	--- TIMING_PRIOR begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING_PRIOR end		
{	--- OBSERVATION_PRIOR begin		
OBX	Observation/Result - previous result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments - previous result		2
}	--- OBSERVATION_PRIOR end		
}	--- ORDER_PRIOR end		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

OML^O21^OML_O21	Laboratory Order Message	Status	Chapter
}]	--- PRIOR_RESULT end		
]	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Transaction		6
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
[BLG]	Billing Segment		4
}	--- ORDER end		

4.4.7 ORL - general laboratory order response message to any OML (event O22)

The function of this message is to respond to an OML message. An ORL message is the application acknowledgment to an OML message. See Chapter 2 for a description of the acknowledgment paradigm.

ORL^O22^ORL_O22	General Laboratory Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST begin		
OBR	Observation Request		4
[{	--- SPECIMEN begin		
SPM	Specimen		7
[{ SAC }]	Specimen Container Details		13
}]	--- SPECIMEN end		
]	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST end		
}]	--- ORDER end		

ORL^O22^ORL_O22	General Laboratory Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
]	--- PATIENT end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.4.8 OML – Laboratory order for multiple orders related to a single specimen (event O33)

The trigger event for this message is any change to a laboratory order. Such changes include submission of new orders, cancellations, updates, etc where multiple orders are associated with a single sample which may be carried in multiple containers. OML messages can originate also with a placer, filler, or an interested third party.

This allows for a Specimen-centric message with multiple orders per specimen grouped by the specimen.

The following message structure may be used for the communication of laboratory and other order messages and must be used for lab automation messages where the message requires Specimen/container information to group a number of orders. While the ORM message with the OBR segment can be used for backwards compatibility for general lab messages, only the OML message should be used to take advantage of the specimen and container extensions required in laboratory automation.

In relationship to triggers O21, O33, and O35, this message/trigger (O33) should be used where an a specimen, with optional multiple containers, may have multiple orders are to be communicated.

OML^O33^OML_O33	Laboratory Order – Multiple Order Per Specimen Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[{ NK1 }]	Next of Kin/Associated Parties		3
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit- Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

OML^O33^OML_O33	Laboratory Order – Multiple Order Per Specimen Message	Status	Chapter
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- SPECIMEN begin		
SPM	Specimen		7
[{ OBX }]	Observations related to specimen		7
[{ SAC }]	Specimen Container		13
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST begin		
OBR	Observation Request		4
[TCD]	Test Code Details		13
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[{ DG1 }]	Diagnosis		6
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[TCD]	Test Code Detail		13
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Results)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[{	--- PRIOR_RESULT begin		
[	--- PATIENT_PRIOR begin		
PID	Patient Identification – previous result		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics – previous result		3
]	--- PATIENT_PRIOR end		
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT_PRIOR begin		
PV1	Patient Visit – previous result		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit Add. Info – previous result		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT_PRIOR end		

OML^O33^OML_O33		Laboratory Order – Multiple Order Per Specimen Message		Status	Chapter
	[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information	- previous result		3
	{	--- ORDER_PRIOR begin			
	[ORC]	Common Order	- previous result		4
	OBR	Order Detail	- previous result		4
	[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments	- previous result		2
	[{	--- TIMING_PRIOR begin			
	TQ1	Timing/Quantity			4
	[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence			4
	}]	--- TIMING_PRIOR end			
	{	--- OBSERVATION_PRIOR begin			
	OBX	Observation/Result	- previous result		7
	[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments	- previous result		2
	}	--- OBSERVATION_PRIOR end			
	}	--- ORDER_PRIOR end			
	}]	--- PRIOR_RESULT end			
]		--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST end			
[{ FT1 }]		Financial Transaction			6
[{ CTI }]		Clinical Trial Identification			7
[BLG]		Billing Segment			4
}		--- ORDER end			
}		--- SPECIMEN end			

4.4.9 ORL – Laboratory order response message to a multiple order related to single specimen OML (event O34)

The function of this message is to respond to an OML message where the original trigger event produced an OML with the Specimen Group segment above the ORC. An ORL message is the application acknowledgment to an OML message. See Chapter 2 for a description of the acknowledgment paradigm.

ORL^O34^ORL_O34	Laboratory Order Acknowledgment Message – Multiple Order Per Specimen	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORL^O34^ORL_O34		Laboratory Order Acknowledgment Message – Multiple Order Per Specimen	Status	Chapter
[		--- PATIENT begin		
	PID	Patient Identification		3
{		--- SPECIMEN begin		
	SPM	Specimen		7
	[{ OBX }]	Observations related to specimen		7
	[{ SAC }]	Specimen Container		
	[{	--- ORDER begin		
	ORC	Common Order		4
	[{	--- TIMING begin		
	TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
	[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
	}]	--- TIMING end		
	[	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST begin		
	OBR	Observation Request		4
	[{	--- SPECIMEN begin		
	SPM	Specimen		7
	[{ SAC }]	Specimen Container Details		13
	}]	--- SPECIMEN end		
	]	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST end		
	}]	--- ORDER end		
}		--- SPECIMEN end		
]		--- PATIENT end		
]		--- RESPONSE end		

4.4.10 OML – Laboratory order for multiple orders related to a single container of a specimen (event O35)

The trigger event for this message is any change to a laboratory order. Such changes include submission of new orders, cancellations, updates, etc where multiple orders are associated with a single sample which may be carried in multiple containers. OML messages can originate also with a placer, filler, or an interested third party.

This allows for a Specimen-centric message with multiple orders per specimen grouped by the specimen.

The following message structure may be used for the communication of laboratory and other order messages and must be used for lab automation messages where the message requires Specimen/container information to group a number of orders. While the ORM message with the OBR segment can be used for backwards compatibility for general lab messages, only the OML message should be used to take advantage of the specimen and container extensions required in laboratory automation.

In relationship to triggers O21, O33, and O35, this message/trigger (O35) should be used for laboratory orders where there is 1 or more Specimens with 1 to many containers each container may have 1 to many orders with previous result(s) per container.

OML^O35^OML_O35	Laboratory Order – Multiple Order Per Container of Specimen Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[{ NK1 }]	Next of Kin/Associated Parties		3
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit- Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- SPECIMEN begin		
SPM	Specimen		7
[{ OBX }]	Observations related to specimen		7
{	--- SPECIMEN_CONTAINER begin		
SAC	Specimen Container		13
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

OML^O35^OML_O35	Laboratory Order – Multiple Order Per Container of Specimen Message	Status	Chapter
[	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST begin		
OBR	Observation Request		4
[TCD]	Test Code Details		13
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[{ DG1 }]	Diagnosis		6
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[TCD]	Test Code Detail		13
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Results)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[{	--- PRIOR_RESULT begin		
[	--- PATIENT_PRIOR begin		
PID	Patient Identification – previous result		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics – previous result		3
]	--- PATIENT_PRIOR end		
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT_PRIOR begin		
PV1	Patient Visit – previous result		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit Add. Info – previous result		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT_PRIOR end		
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information - previous result		3
{	--- ORDER_PRIOR begin		
[ORC]	Common Order - previous result		4
OBR	Order Detail - previous result		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments - previous result		2
[{	--- TIMING_PRIOR begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING_PRIOR end		
{	--- OBSERVATION_PRIOR begin		
OBX	Observation/Result - previous result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments - previous result		2
}	--- OBSERVATION_PRIOR end		
}	--- ORDER_PRIOR end		

OML^O35^OML_O35	Laboratory Order – Multiple Order Per Container of Specimen Message	Status	Chapter
}]	--- PRIOR_RESULT end		
]	--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Transaction		6
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
[BLG]	Billing Segment		4
}	--- ORDER end		
}	--- SPECIMEN_CONTAINER end		
}	--- SPECIMEN end		

4.4.11 ORL – Laboratory order response message to a single container of a specimen OML (event O36)

The function of this message is to respond to an OML message where the original trigger event produced an OML with the Specimen Group segment above the ORC. An ORL message is the application acknowledgment to an OML message. See Chapter 2 for a description of the acknowledgment paradigm.

ORL^O36^ORL_O36	Laboratory Order Acknowledgment Message – Multiple Order Per Container of Specimen	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
{	--- SPECIMEN begin		
SPM	Specimen		7
[{ OBX }]	Observations related to specimen		7
{	--- SPECIMEN_CONTAINER begin		
SAC	Specimen Container		13
[{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORL^O36^ORL_O36		Laboratory Order Acknowledgment Message – Multiple Order Per Container of Specimen	Status	Chapter
[		--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST begin		
	OBR	Observation Request		4
]		--- OBSERVATION_REQUEST end		
}]		--- ORDER end		
}		--- SPECIMEN_CONTAINER end		
}		--- SPECIMEN end		
]		--- PATIENT end		
]		--- RESPONSE end		

4.4.12 OMI – Imaging Order Message (Event O23)

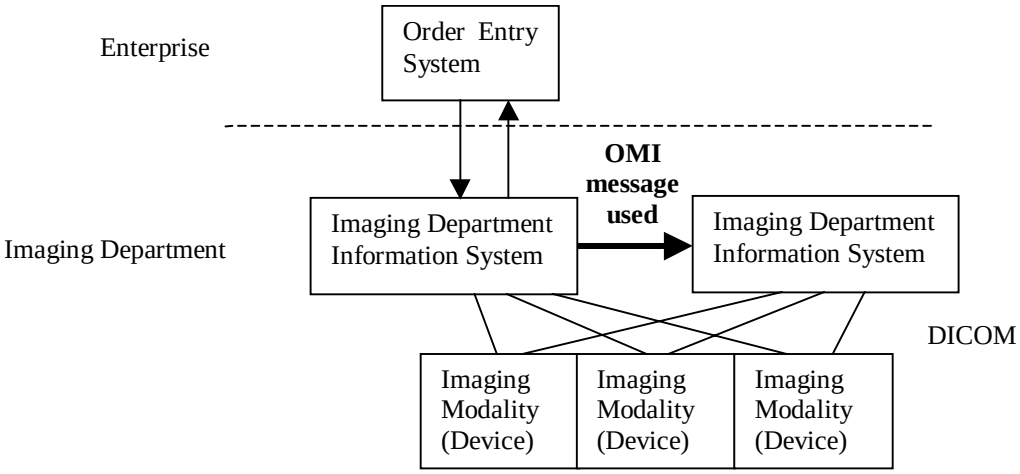
This message is used in communication between the information systems involved in the fulfillment of the request directed to the imaging department, such as a Radiology Information System (RIS) and a Picture Archiving and Communication System (PACS). For the purpose of the following discussion these systems will be identified as Imaging Department Information Systems (IDIS). Information contained in the Imaging Procedure Control (IPC) segment allows multiple IDIS to share the context of Imaging Studies (collections of images acquired, processed, stored, and interpreted) in Image Management tasks.

The order for the imaging service is communicated between the Order Placer (such as an Order Entry system) and the Order Filler (such as an RIS). In the imaging department environment, the Order Filler also identifies the set of procedures (studies) and sub-procedures (procedure steps) that have to be performed in the process of fulfilling the order. Each sub-procedure is performed using a single device (station). The Order Filler identifies the type of device and either a specific device or group of devices (for example, by geographic location) one of which is to be used in performing the procedure step. Thus, the system performs an aspect of workflow management in the department.

Another information system in the department may be managing storage and distribution of the images within the department as well as providing them to the enterprise. This system will have to operate within the same context as the system managing the workflow. This context includes identifiers, content of the order, and details of procedures and procedure steps that have to be performed to fulfill that particular order.

It is expected that the OMI message will typically be used in communication between IDIS as depicted in figure 4-1.

Figure 4-1. Use of OMI message



OMI^O23^OMI_O23	Imaging Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit- Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info – Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

OMI^O23^OMI_O23	Imaging Order Message	Status	Chapter
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
OBR	Observation		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
[CTD]	Contact Data		11
[{ DG1 }]	Diagnosis		6
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Results)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
{ IPC }	Imaging Procedure Control		4
}	--- ORDER end		

4.4.13 ORI - Imaging Order Response Message To Any OMI (Event O24)

The function of this message is to respond to an OMI message. An ORI message is the application acknowledgment to an OMI message. See Chapter 2 for a description of the acknowledgment paradigm.

ORI^O24^ORI_O24	Imaging Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
OBR	Observation		4

ORI^O24^ORI_O24	Imaging Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)		2
{ IPC }	Imaging Procedure Control		4
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.5 GENERAL SEGMENTS

The following segments (ORC and BLG) are common to many order messages.

4.5.1 ORC - Common Order Segment

The Common Order segment (ORC) is used to transmit fields that are common to all orders (all types of services that are requested). The ORC segment is required in the Order (ORM) message. ORC is mandatory in Order Acknowledgment (ORR) messages if an order detail segment is present, but is not required otherwise.

If details are needed for a particular type of order segment (e.g., Pharmacy, Dietary), the ORC must precede any order detail segment (e.g., RXO, ODS). In some cases, the ORC may be as simple as the string `ORC|OK|<placer order number>|<filler order number>|<cr>.`

If details are not needed for the order, the order detail segment may be omitted. For example, to place an order on hold, one would transmit an ORC with the following fields completed: *ORC-1-order control* with a value of HD, *ORC-2-placer order number*, and *ORC-3-filler order number*.

There is some overlap between fields of the ORC and those in the order detail segments. These are described in the succeeding sections.

HL7 Attribute Table – ORC – Common Order

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	2	ID	R		0119	00215	Order Control
2	22	EI	C			00216	Placer Order Number
3	22	EI	C			00217	Filler Order Number
4	22	EI	O			00218	Placer Group Number
5	2	ID	O		0038	00219	Order Status
6	1	ID	O		0121	00220	Response Flag
7	200	TQ	B	Y		00221	Quantity/Timing
8	200	EIP	O			00222	Parent
9	26	TS	O			00223	Date/Time of Transaction
10	250	XCN	O	Y		00224	Entered By
11	250	XCN	O	Y		00225	Verified By
12	250	XCN	O	Y		00226	Ordering Provider
13	80	PL	O			00227	Enterer's Location
14	250	XTN	O	Y/2		00228	Call Back Phone Number
15	26	TS	O			00229	Order Effective Date/Time

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
16	250	CE	O			00230	Order Control Code Reason
17	250	CE	O			00231	Entering Organization
18	250	CE	O			00232	Entering Device
19	250	XCN	O	Y		00233	Action By
20	250	CE	O		0339	01310	Advanced Beneficiary Notice Code
21	250	XON	O	Y		01311	Ordering Facility Name
22	250	XAD	O	Y		01312	Ordering Facility Address
23	250	XTN	O	Y		01313	Ordering Facility Phone Number
24	250	XAD	O	Y		01314	Ordering Provider Address
25	250	CWE	O			01473	Order Status Modifier
26	60	CWE	C		0552	01641	Advanced Beneficiary Notice Override Reason
27	26	TS	O			01642	Filler's Expected Availability Date/Time
28	250	CWE	O		0177	00615	Confidentiality Code
29	250	CWE	O		0482	01643	Order Type
30	250	CNE	O		0483	01644	Enterer Authorization Mode

ORC use notes

a) placer order groups

The Standard supports a mechanism to collect several orders together in a group. Most often this is used to represent an "ordering session" for a single patient.

An order group is a list of orders (ORCs) associated with an *ORC-4-placer group number*. A group is established when the placer supplies a placer group number with the original order. The order group consists of all the ORCs and order detail segments that have the same placer group number. Orders can be removed from the group using cancel, or added using the replacement or parent-child mechanisms. New orders cannot otherwise be added to the group.

b) duplicate fields

The ORC is intended to uniformly define the fields that are common to all orders (i.e., requested services). Some ORC fields are duplicated in some order detail segments (e.g., OBR, RXO). For example, *ORC-2-placer order number* has the same meaning and purpose as *OBR-2-placer order number* field. This promotes upward compatibility with past versions and ASTM.

The rule for using these fields is that the value must appear in the order detail segment if it does not appear in the ORC. However, it is recommended to transmit the field value in both places to avoid confusion.

c) parent/child - cancel, hold, discontinue

During transmission of a request to cancel, hold, or discontinue a parent order, the request is intended to apply recursively to the parent order and all associated child orders.

For example:

1) An EKG application receives an order for three EKGs on successive mornings.

2) The EKG application creates three child orders, one for each requested EKG.

3) The first daily EKG has already been performed when a request is received to cancel the original parent order. (The parent is beyond the point of cancellation.)

4) The remaining, unperformed, children are canceled as a result of the request.

4.5.1.0 ORC field definitions

4.5.1.1 ORC-1 Order Control (ID) 00215

Definition: Determines the function of the order segment. Refer to *HL7 Table 0119 - Order Control Codes And Their Meaning* for valid entries. Depending on the message, the action of the control code may refer to an order or an individual service. For example, the code CA in an OMP message cancels the order. The same code in an RDS message, cancels the dispense. Very detailed explanatory notes are given at the end of this section.

This field may be considered the "trigger event" identifier for orders. The codes fall roughly into the following three categories:

a) event request

Codes like "NW" (new order) and "CA" (cancel order request) are used to initiate an event.

b) event acknowledgment

Codes like "OK" (order accepted) and "CR" (canceled as requested) are used to reply to the event request.

c) event notification

Codes like "OC" (order canceled) and "OD" (order discontinued) are used to notify other applications that an event has occurred. No application reply is necessary.

Event request codes are intended to initiate an event. Event acknowledgment codes are intended to reply to an application that requested an event. Event notification codes are intended to notify another application that, e.g., the filler has performed some action on an order that the other application, e.g., the placer, needs to know.

Fillers, placers, and other applications can use event requests, event acknowledgments, and event - notification-type trigger events interchangeably. However, certain order control codes can originate only from the filler (e.g., CR) and others can only originate from the placer (e.g., CA).

Refer to section 4.19.1 for the contents of *HL7 Table 0119 – Order Control Codes*.

4.5.1.1.1 Table notes for order control codes of ORC

a) CA

A cancellation is a request not to do a previously ordered service. Confirmation of the cancellation request is provided by the filler, e.g., a message with an *ORC-1-order control* value of CR.

b) UC

An unable-to-cancel code is used when the ordered service is at a point that it cannot be canceled by the filler or when local rules prevent cancellation by the filler. The use of this code is dependent on the value of *ORC-6-response flag*.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

c) DC

A discontinue request code is used to stop an ongoing ordered service. It is not the same as a cancellation request, which is used in an attempt to prevent an order from happening.

d) RP, RQ, RU, RO

A replacement is the substitution of one or more orders for one or more previously ordered services.

The replaced orders are treated as though they were canceled. If and when an ordered service can be replaced are local site-specific determinations.

Use the parent/child order control codes if the site specifies that the original order must remain intact. Do not use the replacement codes under this circumstance.

For each order to be replaced, use an *ORC-1-order control* value of RP (request for a replacement going to a filler) or RU (an unsolicited replacement created by the filler) used by the filler to notify the placer and/or other systems). By local agreement, the ORC segment (with RP or RU) may be followed by its original order detail segment. The ORC segments (with RP or RU) must be followed by an ORC segment with an *ORC-1-order control* value of RO (indicating the replacement order). By local agreement, the ORC with the RO value may be followed by an order detail segment.

For example, suppose that an ancillary application were replacing two OBR orders with three different orders. The sequence of segments would be as follows:

Figure 4-2. RU and RO usage (example)

Segment	Order Control	Comment
ORC	RU	1st replaced ORC
OBR		1st replaced order's detail segment
ORC	RU	2nd replaced ORC
OBR		2nd replaced order's detail segment
ORC	RO	1st replacement ORC
OBR		1st replacement order's detail segment
ORC	RO	2nd replacement ORC
OBR		2nd replacement order's detail segment
ORC	RO	3rd replacement ORC
OBR		3rd replacement order's detail segment

Whether the OBR segments must be present is determined by the value of *ORC-6-response flag*.

The described replacement method will handle all possible cases of replacement: one-into-one, many-into-one, one-into-many, and many-into-many. If the placer sent this request to the filler with two RPs, and this was a response back from the filler to the placer, the two RUs (replaced unsolicited) would be two RQs (replaced as requested).

Figure 4-3. RQ and RO usage (example)

Segment	Order Control	Comment
ORC	RQ	1st replaced ORC
OBR		1st replaced order's detail segment
ORC	RQ	2nd replaced ORC
OBR		2nd replaced order's detail segment
ORC	RO	1st replacement ORC
OBR		1st replacement order's detail segment
ORC	RO	2nd replacement ORC
OBR		2nd replacement order's detail segment
ORC	RO	3rd replacement ORC
OBR		3rd replacement order's detail segment

e) RP, RQ

The order replace request code permits the order filler to replace one or more new orders with one or more new orders, at the request of the placer application.

f) RU

The unsolicited replacement code permits the filler application to notify another application without being requested from the placer application.

g) RO, RQ

The replacement order code is sent by the filler application to another application indicating the exact replacement ordered service. It is used with the RP and RU order control codes as described above.

h) RP, RQ, RU, RO

The rules for the order numbers in ORC segments with an order control value of RO are determined by the replacement type (RP or RU).

In the case of the RU type (i.e., unsolicited replacement by the filler), the filler order number is generated as usual by the filler application. The placer order number is identical to the placer order number of the first transmitted ORC with an order control value of RU.

In the case of the RP type (i.e., a replacement request from another application to the filler), the placer order number is generated by the placer application using the procedure for new orders. The filler order number is generated by the filler application using the procedure identical for new orders.

If a replacement sequence is used in an ORU message (i.e., during results reporting), the following are the recommended segments to be used for the replacement orders:

1) ORC with an order control value of RO
2) Any OBR segments (can be replaced by any order detail segments)

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

3) Optionally followed by observation result segments (OBX)

4) NTE segments can appear after the OBR (or any order detail segment) or after an OBX segment as in a regular ORU message

i) PA, CH

The parent (PA) and child (CH) order control codes allow the spawning of "child" orders from a "parent" order without changing the parent (original order). One or more ORC segments with an *ORC-1-order control* value of PA are followed by one or more ORC segments with an *ORC-1-order control* value of CH. Whether OBR segments must be present is determined by the value of *ORC-6-response flag*.

For example, suppose that a microbiology culture produced two organisms and corresponding susceptibility reports. Then the sequence of segments would be as follows:

Figure 4-4. Example of two child orders

Segment	Order Control	Comment
ORC	PA	1st parent ORC
ORC	CH	1st child ORC
OBR		1st child order
ORC	CH	2nd child ORC
OBR		2nd child order

The assignment of placer order numbers in the parent-child paradigm depends on whether the placer or filler creates the child order and in the latter case, on whether the placer supports the SN/NA transaction. If the placer creates the child orders it will assign their placer order numbers according to its usual procedures. If the filler creates the child orders there are two possibilities: each child will inherit the placer order number of its parent, or the filler will use the SN/NA transaction to request that the placer assign a placer order number. In either case, the filler application creates the filler order numbers of the children according to its usual procedures.

Whenever a child order is transmitted in a message the ORC segment's *ORC-8-parent* is valued with the parent's filler order number (if originating from the filler) and with the parent's placer order number (if originating from the filler or if originating from the placer).

The parent-child mechanism can be used to "expand" a parent order (e.g., an order for three EKGs on successive mornings).

j) RE

The observations-to-follow code is used to transmit patient-specific information with an order. An order detail segment (e.g., OBR) can be followed by one or more observation segments (OBX). Any observation that can be transmitted in an ORU message can be transmitted with this mechanism. When results are transmitted with an order, the results should immediately follow the order or orders that they support.

The following example shows the sequence of segments for three Pharmacy orders. It illustrates the use of the RE code:

Figure 4-5. RE usage (example)

Segment	Order Control	Comment
MSH		
PID		
ORC	NW	First new order
RXO		First order segment
ORC	NW	2nd new order
RXO		2nd order segment
[ORC	RE	Patient-specific observation, optional in V 2.2
OBR]		Observation OBR, optional in V 2.2
OBX		An observation segment
OBX		Another observation segment
OBX		Another observation segment
OBX		Another observation segment
ORC	NW	3rd order
RXO		3rd order segment

In this version of HL7, results can be transmitted with an order as one or more OBX segments without the necessity of including the ORC and OBR segments.

Observations can be transmitted in an ORU message without using an ORC. There are times when it is necessary to transmit information not included in the OBR segments of the ORU message. In this case, it is recommended that the ORC be included in the ORU message.

The order control value of RE is required only in ORM messages to indicate that an order is followed by observation results (OBX). The RE code is not necessary in the ORU message because it is expected that the OBR segments can be followed by observation results (OBX).

k) RR

Left in for backward compatibility. In the current version it is equivalent to an accept acknowledgment. The request-received code indicates that an order message has been received and will be processed later. The order has not yet undergone the processing that would permit a more exact response.

l) SN, NA, NW

There are three circumstances that involve requesting an order number (*ORC-2-placer order number* or *ORC-3-filler order number*):

1) When the filler application needs to request an ORC-3-filler order number from a centralized application (e.g., HIS)
2) When the filler application needs to request an ORC-2-placer order number from some other application (e.g., Order Entry)
3) When an application (not the filler application) wants to assign an ORC-3-filler order number for a new order

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

1) The filler application needs a centralized filler order number

SN - The send order number code provides a mechanism for the filler to request an *ORC-3-filler order number* from some centralized application (called "other" in the table below), such as a central HIS, by sending an ORM message containing an *ORC-1-order control* value of SN. This ORC has a null *ORC-3-filler order number* and an *ORC-2-placer order number* created by the filler application when the filler originates the order.

The ORM (SN type) message can be acknowledged by two methods:

i) By an ORR message containing an *ORC-1-order control* value of OK. An unsolicited ORM message can be sent at a future time, containing an ORC with *ORC-1-order control* value of NA.

ii) By an ORR message containing an *ORC-1-order control* value of NA as described below.

NA - The number assigned code allows the "other" application to notify the filler application of the newly-assigned filler order number. *ORC-1-order control* contains value of NA, *ORC-2-placer order number* (from the ORC with the SN value), and the newly-assigned filler order number.

Note: Both the placer order number and the filler order number have the filler's application ID.

Code	From	ORC-2-Placer Order Number	ORC-3-Filler Order Number
SN	filler application	placer order number^filler application ID	null
NA	other application	placer order number^filler application ID	filler order number^filler application ID

2) The filler application needs a placer order number

SN - The send order number code provides a mechanism for the filler application to request an *ORC-2-placer order number* from another application (called "other" in the table below) by sending an ORM message containing an *ORC-1-order control* value of SN. This ORC has a null *ORC-2-placer order number* and an *ORC-3-filler order number* created by the filler application when the filler originates the order.

The ORM (SN type) message can be acknowledged by two methods:

i) By an ORR message containing an *ORC-1-order control* value of OK. An unsolicited ORM message can be sent at a future time, containing an *ORC-1-order control* value of NA.

ii) By an ORR message containing an *ORC-1-order control* value of NA as described below.

NA - The number assigned code allows the "other" application to notify the filler application of the newly-assigned *ORC-2-placer order number*. The ORC contains an *ORC-1-order control* value of NA, the newly-assigned *ORC-2-placer order number*, and the *ORC-3-filler order number* (from the ORC with the SN value).

Note: The new ORC-2-placer order number has the placer's application ID.

Code	From	ORC-2-Placer Order Number	ORC-3-Filler Order Number
SN	filler application	null	filler order number^filler application ID
NA	other application	Placer order number^placer application ID	filler order number^filler application ID

3) An application wants to assign a filler order number

NW - When the application creating an order (not the filler application) wants to assign a filler order number for a new order

or

RO - (RO following an RP). In this case, the "other" application completes *ORC-3-filler order number*, using the filler application ID as the second component of the filler order number.

Code	From	ORC-2-Placer Order Number	ORC-3-Filler Order Number
NW or RO	other application to the filler	placer order number^placer application ID	filler order number^filler application ID

m) CN

The combined result code provides a mechanism to transmit results that are associated with two or more orders. This situation occurs commonly in radiology reports when the radiologist dictates a single report for two or more exams represented as two or more orders. For example, knee and hand films for a rheumatoid arthritis patient might generate a single dictation on the part of the radiologist.

When such results are reported the CN code replaces the RE code in all but the last ORC, and the results follow the last ORC and its OBR. An example follows of a single report following three ORCs:

```
MSH|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
ORC|CN|...<cr>
OBR|1|A4461XA^HIS|81641^RAD|73666^Bilateral Feet|...<cr>
ORC|CN|...<cr>
OBR|2|A4461XB^HIS|81642^RAD|73642^Bilateral Hand PA|...<cr>
ORC|RE|...<cr>
OBR|3|A4461XC^HIS|81643^RAD|73916^Bilateral Knees|...<cr>
OBX|1|CE|73916&IMP|1|Radiologist's Impression|...<cr>
OBX|2|CE|73642&IMP|1|Radiologist's Impression|...<cr>
OBX|3|FT|73642&GDT|1|Description|...<cr>
```

n) UA

An unable-to-accept code is used when a new order cannot be accepted by the filler. Possible reasons include requesting a prescription for a drug which the patient is allergic to or for an order which requires certain equipment resources which are not available such that the order cannot be filled. Note that this is different from the communication level acceptance as defined within the MSA segment.

o) RF

RF accommodates requests by both the filler or the placer. The filler may be requesting refill authorization from the placer. A placer system may be requesting a refill to be done by the filler system.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

p) AF

AF is a response back from the placer authorizing a refill or quantity of refills.

q) DF

DF indicates that the placer will not authorize refills for the order. The order control code reason may be used to indicate the reason for the request denial. Some suggested values include:

AA	Patient unknown to the provider
AB	Patient never under provider care
AC	Patient no longer under provider care
AD	Patient has requested refill too soon
AE	Medication never prescribed for the patient
AF	Patient should contact provider first
AG	Refill not appropriate

Note that these values originate from the NCPDP SCRIPT Response Segment Code List Qualifiers.

r) FU

FU notifies the placer that the filler issued a refill for the order at the patient's request.

s) OF

OF directly responds to the placer system's request for a refill

t) UF

UF indicates an application level denial by the filler system to an authorized refill request.

u) LI, UN

Use only with Patient Care problems or goals, Chapter 12.

v) PR

PR indicates that this ORC is part of an ORU structure containing previous observation, which is embedded in the order.

At least two main use cases require that the complete results of the previous observations be transmitted with the order.

- Diagnostic laboratories referring tests to another lab for either confirmation of results (HIV, etc.) or due to not being equipped to do the tests (genetic testing, etc.).

- Diagnostic laboratories sending test results to Knowledge Bases for the automated generation of diagnostic comments for inclusion into the lab report.

w) OP, PY

These order control codes are used to communicate an order between systems where the order is intended for informational purposes. For example, an order that will be performed by a vendor outside the enterprise of communicating systems. The communicating systems may need to maintain information relative to the order for clinical continuity, but no actions to perform the ordered service are intended.

OP represents an informational version of NW, PY represents the informational-only version of RO. NW and RO table notes also apply to OP and PY, respectively.

4.5.1.2 ORC-2 Placer Order Number (EI) 00216

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the placer application's order number.

This field is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (See Section 2.A.28, "EI - Entity Identifier"). The first component is a string that identifies an individual order (e.g., OBR). A limit of fifteen (15) characters is suggested but not required. An implementation is HL7 compliant when the number of characters for this field is increased to accommodate applications that require a greater number of characters for the Placer order number. It is assigned by the placer (ordering application). It identifies an order uniquely among all orders from a particular ordering application. The second through fourth components contain the application ID of the placing application in the same form as the HD data type (Section 2.A.36, "HD - Hierarchic designator"). The second component, namespace ID, is a user-defined coded value that will be uniquely associated with an application. A limit of six (6) characters is suggested but not required. A given institution or group of intercommunicating institutions should establish a unique list of applications that may be potential placers and fillers and assign unique application IDs. The components are separated by component delimiters.

There are three situations in which the true placer is somewhat arbitrary (and thus not unique):

a) in *ORC-1-order control* value of RO, following an RU replacement;

b) in *ORC-1-order control* value of CH (child orders); and

c) in *ORC-1-order control* value of SN (send number).

See the Table Notes under *ORC-1-order control* for the details of how the *ORC-2-placer order number* is assigned in these cases.

The application ID list becomes one of the institution's master dictionary lists that is documented in Chapter 8. Since third-party applications (those other than the placer and filler of an order) can send and receive ORM and ORR messages, the placer application ID in this field may not be the same as any sending and receiving application on the network (as identified in the MSH segment).

ORC-2-placer order number is the same as *OBR-2-placer order number*. If the placer order number is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR and vice versa. If both fields, *ORC-2-placer order number* and *OBR-2-placer order number* are valued, they must contain the same value. When results are transmitted in an ORU message, an ORC is not required, and the identifying placer order number must be present in the OBR segments.

These rules apply to the few other fields that are present in both ORC and OBR for upward compatibility (e.g., quantity/timing, parent numbers, ordering provider, and ordering call back numbers).

4.5.1.3 ORC-3 Filler Order Number (EI) 00217

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the order number associated with the filling application. It is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (Section 2.A.28). Its first component is a string that identifies an order detail segment (e.g., OBR). A limit of fifteen (15) characters is suggested but not required. An implementation is HL7 compliant when the number of characters for this field is increased to accommodate applications that

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

require a greater number of characters for the Filler order number. It is assigned by the order filler (receiving) application. This string must uniquely identify the order (as specified in the order detail segment) from other orders in a particular filling application (e.g., clinical laboratory). This uniqueness must persist over time.

The second through fourth components contain the filler application ID, in the form of the HD data type (see Section 2.A.36, "HD - hierarchic designator"). The second component is a user-defined coded value that uniquely defines the application from other applications on the network. A limit of six (6) characters is suggested but not required. The second component of the filler order number always identifies the actual filler of an order.

A given institution or group of intercommunicating institutions should establish a list of applications that may be potential placers and fillers of orders and assign each a unique application ID. The application ID list becomes one of the institution's master dictionary lists that is documented in Chapter 8. Since third-party applications (those other than the placer and filler of an order) can send and receive ORM and ORR messages, the filler application ID in this field may not be the same as any sending and receiving application on the network (as identified in the MSH segment).

ORC-3-filler order number is the same as *OBR-3-filler order number*. If the filler order number is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR. (This rule is the same for other identical fields in the ORC and OBR and promotes upward and ASTM compatibility.) This is particularly important when results are transmitted in an ORU message. In this case, the ORC is not required and the identifying filler order number must be present in the OBR segments.

The *filler order number (OBR-3 or ORC-3)* also uniquely identifies an order and its associated observations. For example, suppose that an institution collects observations from several ancillary applications into a common database and this common database is queried by yet another application for observations. In this case, the filler order number and placer order number transmitted by the common database application would be that of the original filler and placer, respectively, rather than a new one assigned by the common database application.

Similarly, if a third-party application, not the filler or placer, of an order were authorized to modify the status of an order (say, cancel it), the third-party application would send the filler an ORM message containing an ORC segment with *ORC-1-order control* equal to "CA" and containing the original placer order number and filler order number, rather than assign either itself.

4.5.1.4 ORC-4 Placer Group Number (EI) 00218

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field allows an order placing application to group sets of orders together and subsequently identify them. It is a case of an Entity Identifier data type (2.A.28).

The first component is a string that uniquely identifies all order groups from the given placer application. A limit of fifteen (15) characters is suggested but not required. It is assigned by the placer application and may come from the same series as the placer order number of the ORC, but this is not required.

The second through fourth components constitute a placer application ID identical to the analogous components of *ORC-2-placer order number*. Order groups and how to use them are described in detail in Section *4.5.1*, "*ORC - Common Order Segment*."

4.5.1.5 ORC-5 Order Status (ID) 00219

Definition: This field specifies the status of an order. Refer to *HL7 Table 0038 - Order status* for valid entries. The purpose of this field is to report the status of an order either upon request (solicited), or when the status changes (unsolicited). It does not initiate action. It is assumed that the order status always reflects the status as it is known to the sending application at the time that the message is sent. Only the filler can originate the value of this field.

Although *HL7 Table 0038 - Order status* contains many of the same values contained in *HL7 Table 0119 - Order control codes and their meaning*, the purpose is different. Order status may typically be used in a message with an *ORC-1-order control* value of SR or SC to report the status of the order on request or to any interested party at any time.

HL7 Table 0038 - Order status

Value	Description	Comment
A	Some, but not all, results available	
CA	Order was canceled	
CM	Order is completed	
DC	Order was discontinued	
ER	Error, order not found	
HD	Order is on hold	
IP	In process, unspecified	
RP	Order has been replaced	
SC	In process, scheduled	

4.5.1.6 ORC-6 Response Flag (ID) 00220

Definition: This field allows the placer (sending) application to determine the amount of information to be returned from the filler. Sometimes the requested level of response may not be possible immediately, but when it is possible, the filler (receiving) application must send the information. When the field is null, D is the default value of the field. Refer to *HL7 Table 0121 - Response flag* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0121 - Response flag

Value	Description	Comment
E	Report exceptions only	
R	Same as E, also Replacement and Parent-Child	
D	Same as R, also other associated segments	
F	Same as D, plus confirmations explicitly	
N	Only the MSA segment is returned	

4.5.1.7 ORC-7 Quantity/Timing (TQ) 00221

```
Components:  <Quantity (CQ)> ^ <Interval (RI)> ^ <Duration (ST)> ^ <Start Date/Time
           (TS)> ^ <End Date/Time (TS)> ^ <Priority (ST)> ^ <Condition (ST)> ^ <Text
           (TX)> ^ <Conjunction (ID)> ^ <Order Sequencing (OSD)> ^ <Occurrence
           Duration (CE)> ^ <Total Occurrences (NM)>

Subcomponents for Quantity (CQ):  <Quantity (NM)> & <Units (CE)>

           Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Interval (RI):  <Repeat Pattern (IS)> & <Explicit Time Interval
           (ST)>

Subcomponents for Start Date/Time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
           Precision (ID)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
Subcomponents for End Date/Time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Order Sequencing (OSD):  <Sequence/Results Flag (ID)> & <Placer
          Order Number: Entity Identifier (ST)> & <Placer Order Number: Namespace ID
          (IS)> & <Filler Order Number: Entity Identifier (ST)> & <Filler Order
          Number: Namespace ID (IS)> & <Sequence Condition Value (ST)> & <Maximum
          Number of Repeats (NM)> & <Placer Order Number: Universal ID (ST)> &
          <Placer Order Number: Universal ID Type (ID)> & <Filler Order Number:
          Universal ID (ST)> & <Filler Order Number: Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Occurrence Duration (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: ***This field is retained for backward compatibility only.*** The reader is referred to the TQ1 and TQ2 segments described in sections 4.5.4 and 4.5.5 respectively.

This field determines the priority, quantity, frequency, and timing of an atomic service. Order segments should be thought of as describing an atomic service. It is a composite field that is defined in detail in Section *4.3*, "*Quantity/Timing (TQ) Data Type Definition*."

For example, if an OBR segment describes a unit of blood, this field might request that three (3) such units be given on successive mornings. In this case *ORC-7-quantity/timing* would be "`1^QAM^X3`". *ORC-7-quantity/timing* is the same as *OBR-27-quantity/timing*.

To send information about "collection time", use the 'text' component of the TQ data type in either the ORC-7 or OBR-27.

ORC-7-quantity/timing is the same as *OBR-27-quantity/timing*. If the ORC-7 and OBR-27 are both valued, then both should be valued exactly the same. If the quantity/timing is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR. (This rule is the same for other identical fields in the ORC and OBR and promotes upward and ASTM compatibility.) This is particularly important when results are transmitted in an ORU message. In this case, the ORC is not required and the identifying filler order number must be present in the OBR segments.

4.5.1.8 ORC-8 Parent (EIP) 00222

```
Components:  <Placer Assigned Identifier (EI)> ^ <Filler Assigned Identifier (EI)>

Subcomponents for Placer Assigned Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
          <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Filler Assigned Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
          <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field relates a child to its parent when a parent-child relationship exists. The parent-child mechanism is described under *ORC-1-order control* notes.

The first component has the same format as *ORC-2-placer order number* (Section *4.5.1.2*, "*Placer Order Number (EI) 00216*)." The second component has the same format as *ORC-3-filler order number* (Section *4.5.1.3*, "*Filler Order Number (EI) 00217*)". The components of the placer order number and the filler order number are transmitted in sub-components of the two components of this field.

ORC-8-parent is the same as *OBR-29-parent*. If the parent is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR. (This rule is the same for other identical fields in the ORC and OBR and promotes upward and ASTM compatibility.) This is particularly important when results are transmitted in an ORU

message. In this case, the ORC is not required and the identifying filler order number must be present in the OBR segments.

4.5.1.9 ORC-9 Date/Time of Transaction (TS) 00223

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the date and time of the event that initiated the current transaction as reflected in *ORC-1 Order Control Code*. This field is not equivalent to *MSH-7 Date and Time of Message* which reflects the date/time of the physical message.

4.5.1.10 ORC-10 Entered By (XCN) 00224

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
           Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
           (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
           <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
           <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
           Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
           (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
           <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
           (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
           <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
           Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
           Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
           & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
           & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
           Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
           & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
           <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

           Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
           (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
           Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
           <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
           Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
           Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
           Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
           (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
           <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
           System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
           <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identity of the person who actually keyed the request into the application. Note that this refers to the current transaction as reflected in *ORC-1 Order Control Code*. It

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

provides an audit trail in case the request is entered incorrectly and the ancillary department needs to clarify the request. By local agreement, either the ID number or name component may be omitted.

4.5.1.11 ORC-11 Verified By (XCN) 00225

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
          Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
          (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
          <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
          <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
          Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
          (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
          <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
          (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
          <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
          Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
          Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
          Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
          & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
          <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

          Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identity of the person who verified the accuracy of the entered request. Note that this refers to the current transaction as reflected in *ORC-1 Order Control Code*. It is used in cases where the request is entered by a technician and needs to be verified by a higher authority (e.g., a nurse). By local agreement, either the ID number or name component may be omitted.

4.5.1.12 ORC-12 Ordering Provider (XCN) 00226

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
          Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
          (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
          <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
```

```
            <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
            Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
            (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
            <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
            (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
            <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
            Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
            Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
            & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
            & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
            Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
            & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
            <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

            Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
            (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
            Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
            <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
            Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
            Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
            Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
            (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
            <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
            System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
            <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identity of the person who is responsible for creating the request (i.e., ordering physician).

ORC-12-ordering provider is the same as *OBR-16-ordering provider*. If the ordering provider is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR. (This rule is the same for other identical fields in the ORC and OBR and promotes upward and ASTM compatibility.) This is particularly important when results are transmitted in an ORU message. In this case, the ORC is not required and the identifying filler order number must be present in the OBR segments.

4.5.1.13 ORC-13 Enterer's Location (PL) 00227

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
            <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Person Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
            <Floor (IS)> ^ <Location Description (ST)> ^ <Comprehensive Location
            Identifier (EI)> ^ <Assigning Authority for Location (HD)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
            <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
Subcomponents for Comprehensive Location Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
          <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority for Location (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> &
          <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the location (e.g., nurse station, ancillary service location, clinic, floor) where the person who entered the request was physically located when the order was entered. Note that this refers to the current transaction as reflected in *ORC-1 Order Control Code*. Only those subcomponents relevant to enterer's location should be valued (commonly nursing unit; facility; building; floor). The person who entered the request is defined in *ORC-10-entered by*.

4.5.1.14 ORC-14 Call Back Phone Number (XTN) 00228

```
Components:  <DEPRECATED-Telephone Number (ST)> ^ <Telecommunication Use Code (ID)> ^
          <Telecommunication Equipment Type (ID)> ^ <Email Address (ST)> ^ <Country
          Code (NM)> ^ <Area/City Code (NM)> ^ <Local Number (NM)> ^ <Extension
          (NM)> ^ <Any Text (ST)> ^ <Extension Prefix (ST)> ^ <Speed Dial Code (ST)>
          ^ <Unformatted Telephone number  (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the telephone number to call for clarification of a request or other information regarding the order. *ORC-14-call back phone number* is the same as *OBR-17-order callback phone number*.

4.5.1.15 ORC-15 Order Effective Date/Time (TS) 00229

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the date/time that the changes to the request took effect or are supposed to take effect.

If *ORC-9-date/time of transaction* is after or equal to *ORC-15-order effective date/time*, the data values in the ORC and its subordinate segments took effect on the order effective date/time.

If *ORC-9-date/time of transaction* is before the time specified in *ORC-15-order effective date/time*, the data values in ORC and its subordinate segments are planned to take effect on the order effective date/time.

If *ORC-15-order effective date/time* is left blank, its value is assumed to be equal to that specified in *ORC-9-date/time of transaction* or *MSH-7-date/time of message* if the transaction date/time is blank.

In the case where the time specified in *ORC-15-order effective date/time* (for the order control code event in the same ORC segment) is different from the corresponding date/time in *ORC-7-quantity/timing*, the time specified in *ORC-15-order effective date/time* takes precedence. Thus if the ORC event is a discontinue request to the filler for a continuing order, and the order-effective date/time is prior to the end date/time of *ORC-7-quantity/timing*, the order effective date/time should take precedence. If the order identified in the ORC has children, the children which have not started should be canceled; if there is a child in process, it should be discontinued; if a child has progressed beyond the point where it can be discontinued, its status is unaffected.

4.5.1.16 ORC-16 Order Control Code Reason (CE) 00230

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
          <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
          Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the explanation (either in coded or text form) of the reason for the order event described by the order control code (*HL7 Table 0119*). Whereas an NTE after the order-specific

segment (e.g., RXO, ORO, OBR) would provide a comment for that specific segment, the purpose of the order control code reason is only to expand on the reason for the order event.

ORC-16-order control code reason is typically not valued when *ORC-1-order control* is NW, although it could be. In the case of a canceled order, for example, this field is commonly used to explain the cancellation. A Pharmacy system that canceled a drug order from a physician because of a well documented allergy would likely report the fact of the allergy in this field.

If it canceled the order because of a drug interaction this field might contain at least the names (and codes, if needed) of the interacting substances, the text describing the interaction, and the level of severity of the interaction.

4.5.1.17 ORC-17 Entering Organization (CE) 00231

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the organization that the enterer belonged to at the time he/she enters/maintains the order, such as medical group or department. The person who entered the request is defined in *ORC-10 -entered by*.

4.5.1.18 ORC-18 Entering Device (CE) 00232

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the physical device (terminal, PC) used to enter the order.

4.5.1.19 ORC-19 Action By (XCN) 00233

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
             Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
             (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
             <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
             <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
             Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
             (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
             <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
             (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
             <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
             Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
             Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
             Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
             & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
             <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identity of the person who initiated the event represented by the corresponding order control code. For example, if the order control code is CA (cancel order request), this field represents the person who requested the order cancellation. This person is typically a care provider but may not always be the same as *ORC-12 ordering provider*.

4.5.1.20 ORC-20 Advanced Beneficiary Notice Code (CE) 01310

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
          <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
          Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the status of the patient's or the patient's representative's consent for responsibility to pay for potentially uninsured services. This element is introduced to satisfy CMS Medical Necessity requirements for outpatient services. This element indicates (a) whether the associated diagnosis codes for the service are subject to medical necessity procedures, (b) whether, for this type of service, the patient has been informed that they may be responsible for payment for the service, and (c) whether the patient agrees to be billed for this service. The values for this field are drawn from *User-Defined Table 0339 – Advanced Beneficiary Notice Code.*

User-defined Table 0339 – Advanced Beneficiary Notice Code

Value	Description	Comment
1	Service is subject to medical necessity procedures	
2	Patient has been informed of responsibility, and agrees to pay for service	
3	Patient has been informed of responsibility, and asks that the payer be billed	
4	Advanced Beneficiary Notice has not been signed	

4.5.1.21 ORC-21 Ordering Facility Name (XON) 01311

```
Components:  <Organization Name (ST)> ^ <Organization Name Type Code (IS)> ^
          <DEPRECATED-ID Number (NM)> ^ <Check Digit (NM)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme
          (ID)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^
          <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^
          <Organization Identifier (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the name of the facility placing the order.

4.5.1.22 ORC-22 Ordering Facility Address (XAD) 01312

```
Components:  <Street Address (SAD)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City (ST)> ^ <State
             or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country (ID)> ^ <Address
             Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation (ST)> ^ <County/Parish Code
             (IS)> ^ <Census Tract (IS)> ^ <Address Representation Code (ID)> ^
             <DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^
             <Expiration Date (TS)>

Subcomponents for Street Address (SAD):  <Street or Mailing Address (ST)> & <Street
             Name (ST)> & <Dwelling Number (ST)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time
             (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
             (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
             Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the address of the facility placing the order.

4.5.1.23 ORC-23 Ordering Facility Phone Number (XTN) 01313

```
Components:  <DEPRECATED-Telephone Number (ST)> ^ <Telecommunication Use Code (ID)> ^
             <Telecommunication Equipment Type (ID)> ^ <Email Address (ST)> ^ <Country
             Code (NM)> ^ <Area/City Code (NM)> ^ <Local Number (NM)> ^ <Extension
             (NM)> ^ <Any Text (ST)> ^ <Extension Prefix (ST)> ^ <Speed Dial Code (ST)>
             ^ <Unformatted Telephone number  (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the telephone number of the facility placing the order.

4.5.1.24 ORC-24 Ordering Provider Address (XAD) 01314

```
Components:  <Street Address (SAD)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City (ST)> ^ <State
             or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country (ID)> ^ <Address
             Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation (ST)> ^ <County/Parish Code
             (IS)> ^ <Census Tract (IS)> ^ <Address Representation Code (ID)> ^
             <DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^
             <Expiration Date (TS)>

Subcomponents for Street Address (SAD):  <Street or Mailing Address (ST)> & <Street
             Name (ST)> & <Dwelling Number (ST)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time
             (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
             (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
             Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the address of the care provider requesting the order.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.5.1.25 ORC-25 Order Status Modifier (CWE) 01473

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field is a modifier or refiner of the *ORC-5-Order status* field. This field may be used to provide additional levels of specificity or additional information for the defined order status codes. Unlike the Order Status field, which is controlled by an HL7 defined table, this field is a CE data type allowing applications to support an unlimited library of Order Status Modifier codes.

Usage Rule: This field may only be populated if the ORC-5-Order Status field is valued.

Examples: An LIS is processing an order with an order status of IP may send an update using the order status modifier to indicate the progress of the order through the laboratory or to indicate that the order has been sent to an external laboratory. Another example using the non-medical orders would be where a phone has been ordered delivered to a patient's room, but has been disconnected temporarily. The *ORC-5-Order status* indicates IP and the *ORC-25-Order status modifier* would indicate a disconnected status. A third example involves pharmacy dispenses. It is sometimes not enough to know the prescription is being dispensed. The *ORC-25-Order status modifier* would indicate if a label had been printed, the prescription filled, or the prescription sold.

4.5.1.26 ORC-26 Advanced Beneficiary Notice Override Reason (CWE) 01641

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the reason why the patient did not sign an Advanced Beneficiary Notice. The reason may be coded or it may be a free text entry. Refer to *HL7 Table 0552 – Advanced beneficiary notice override reason*.

Condition: This field is required if the value of ORC-20 Advanced Beneficiary Notice Code indicates that the notice was not signed. For example, additional qualifying or explanatory information would be justified if ORC-20 was populated with the values "3" or "4" in User-defined Table 0339 – Advanced Beneficiary Notice Code, or similar values in related external code tables.

HL7 Table 0552 - Advanced beneficiary notice override reason

Value	Description	Comment

4.5.1.27 ORC-27 Filler's Expected Availability Date/Time (TS) 01642

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the date/time the filler expects the services to be available. For example when a prescription is ready for pickup or when a supply will be sent or picked up, or for when a laboratory result is expected to be available.

4.5.1.28 ORC –28 Confidentiality Code (CWE) 00615

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains information about the level of security and/or sensitivity surrounding the order (e.g., highly sensitive, not sensitive, sensitive, etc.). Refer to *HL7 Table 0177 – Confidentiality Code* for allowed values. The specific treatment of data with a particular confidentiality level is subject to site-specific negotiation.

4.5.1.29 ORC – 29 Order Type (CWE) 01643

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field indicates whether the order is to be executed in an inpatient setting or an outpatient setting. If this field is not valued, the system default is assumed. Refer to *HL7 Table 0482 – Order Type* for suggested values.

Examples: Before discharge an order is placed for follow-up physical therapy, or to pick up a prescription at a community pharmacy. The patient is an inpatient according to PV1, but the order is an outpatient order.

HL7 Table 0482 - Order Type

Value	Description	Comments
I	Inpatient Order	
O	Outpatient Order	

4.5.1.30 ORC – 30 Enterer Authorization Mode (CNE) 01644

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the form of authorization a recorder had from the responsible practitioner to create or change an order. Refer to *HL7 Table 0483 Authorization Mode* for suggested values.

HL7 Table 0483 – Authorization Mode

Value	Description	Comments
EL	Electronic	
EM	E-mail	
FX	Fax	
IP	In Person	
MA	Mail	
PA	Paper	
PH	Phone	
RE	Reflexive (Automated system)	
VC	Video-conference	
VO	Voice	

* To be harmonized to Participation.mode_cd in version 3.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.5.2 BLG - Billing Segment

The BLG segment is used to provide billing information, on the ordered service, to the filling application.

HL7 Attribute Table – BLG – Billing

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	40	CCD	O		0100	00234	When to Charge
2	50	ID	O		0122	00235	Charge Type
3	100	CX	O			00236	Account ID
4	60	CWE	O		0475	01645	Charge Type Reason

4.5.2.0 BLG field definitions

4.5.2.1 BLG-1 When to charge (CCD) 00234

```
Components:  <Invocation Event  (ID)> ^ <Date/time (TS)>

Subcomponents for Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>
```

4.5.2.2 Definition: This field specifies when to charge for the ordered service. BLG-2 Charge type (ID) 00235

Definition: This field identifies someone or something other than the patient to be billed for this service. It is used in conjunction with *BLG-3-account ID*. Refer to *HL7 Table 0122 - Charge Type* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0122 - Charge type

Value	Description	Comment
CH	Charge	
CO	Contract	
CR	Credit	
DP	Department	
GR	Grant	
NC	No Charge	
PC	Professional	
RS	Research	

4.5.2.3 BLG-3 Account ID (CX) 00236

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme  (ID)> ^
          <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning
          Facility (HD)> ^ <Effective Date (DT)> ^ <Expiration Date (DT)> ^
          <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^ <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>
```

```
Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
           (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
           <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
           System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
           <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the account to be billed. It is used in conjunction with *BLG-2-charge type*. Refer to *HL7 table 0061 - Check digit scheme* in Chapter 2.

4.5.2.4 BLG-4 Charge type reason (CWE) 01645

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
           <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
           Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
           System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

""

Definition: This field explains the choice of and provides the clinical rationale for the selected charge type identified in BLG-2. Refer to *User Defined Table 0475 – Charge Type Reason* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0475 – Charge Type Reason

Value	Description	Comment
01	Allergy	
02	Intolerance	
03	Treatment Failure	
04	Patient Request	
05	No Exception	

4.5.3 OBR - Observation Request Segment

General (taken from ASTM E1238)

The Observation Request (OBR) segment is used to transmit information specific to an order for a diagnostic study or observation, physical exam, or assessment.

The Observation Request segment defines the attributes of a particular request for diagnostic services (e.g., laboratory, EKG) or clinical observations (e.g., vital signs or physical exam). When a placer requests a given set of observations, always include an order segment. For lab tests, the information in the order segment usually applies to a single specimen. However, there is not a one-to-one relationship between specimen and tests ordered. Different test batteries will usually require their own order segments even when they can be performed on a single specimen. In this case, the specimen information must be duplicated in each of the order segments that employ that specimen. For other diagnostic studies, e.g., chest X-ray, a separate order segment will usually be generated for each diagnostic study.

Though multiple observation batteries can be ordered on a single order segment, the observation filler shall generate a separate order segment for each battery that it processes independently, e.g., electrolyte, CBC, vital signs. When reporting the observations, the filling service shall copy the appropriate order (specimen) information from the original order segment into each of the new order segments so that a separate "order" segment is returned to the placer as a "header" for each separate battery of observations.

In the event that an ordered battery of observations cannot be performed, e.g., because of hemolysis on a blood sample, an order segment will be returned to the placer with *OBR-25-result status* equal to X (to indicate that the study was not performed). In this case, no observation segments will be transmitted.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

When observations are successfully completed, the message returned to the placer will include the order segment (OBR) followed by observation (OBX) segments for each distinct observation generated by the order (see Chapter 7). The number of such observation segments will depend upon the number of individual measurements performed in the process.

OBX segments can be sent by the placer along with an order to provide the filling service with clinical data needed to interpret the results. (See Chapter 7 for OBX details.)

HL7 Attribute Table – OBR – Observation Request

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			00237	Set ID – OBR
2	22	EI	C			00216	Placer Order Number
3	22	EI	C			00217	Filler Order Number
4	250	CE	R			00238	Universal Service Identifier
5	2	ID	B			00239	Priority – OBR
6	26	TS	B			00240	Requested Date/Time
7	26	TS	C			00241	Observation Date/Time #
8	26	TS	O			00242	Observation End Date/Time #
9	20	CQ	O			00243	Collection Volume *
10	250	XCN	O	Y		00244	Collector Identifier *
11	1	ID	O		0065	00245	Specimen Action Code *
12	250	CE	O			00246	Danger Code
13	300	ST	O			00247	Relevant Clinical Information
14	26	TS	B			00248	Specimen Received Date/Time *
15	300	SPS	B			00249	Specimen Source
16	250	XCN	O	Y		00226	Ordering Provider
17	250	XTN	O	Y/2		00250	Order Callback Phone Number
18	60	ST	O			00251	Placer Field 1
19	60	ST	O			00252	Placer Field 2
20	60	ST	O			00253	Filler Field 1 +
21	60	ST	O			00254	Filler Field 2 +
22	26	TS	C			00255	Results Rpt/Status Chng - Date/Time +
23	40	MOC	O			00256	Charge to Practice +
24	10	ID	O		0074	00257	Diagnostic Serv Sect ID
25	1	ID	C		0123	00258	Result Status +
26	400	PRL	O			00259	Parent Result +
27	200	TQ	B	Y		00221	Quantity/Timing
28	250	XCN	O	Y		00260	Result Copies To
29	200	EIP	O			00261	Parent
30	20	ID	O		0124	00262	Transportation Mode
31	250	CE	O	Y		00263	Reason for Study
32	200	NDL	O			00264	Principal Result Interpreter +

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
33	200	NDL	O	Y		00265	Assistant Result Interpreter +
34	200	NDL	O	Y		00266	Technician +
35	200	NDL	O	Y		00267	Transcriptionist +
36	26	TS	O			00268	Scheduled Date/Time +
37	4	NM	O			01028	Number of Sample Containers *
38	250	CE	O	Y		01029	Transport Logistics of Collected Sample *
39	250	CE	O	Y		01030	Collector's Comment *
40	250	CE	O			01031	Transport Arrangement Responsibility
41	30	ID	O		0224	01032	Transport Arranged
42	1	ID	O		0225	01033	Escort Required
43	250	CE	O	Y		01034	Planned Patient Transport Comment
44	250	CE	O		0088	00393	Procedure Code
45	250	CE	O	Y	0340	01316	Procedure Code Modifier
46	250	CE	O	Y	0411	01474	Placer Supplemental Service Information
47	250	CE	O	Y	0411	01475	Filler Supplemental Service Information
48	250	CWE	C		0476	01646	Medically Necessary Duplicate Procedure Reason.
49	2	IS	O		0507	01647	Result Handling

4.5.3.0 OBR field definitions

The daggered (+) items in this segment are created by the filler, not the placer. They are valued by the filler as needed when the OBR segment is returned as part of a report.

The starred (*) fields are only relevant when an observation is associated with a specimen. These are completed by the placer when the placer obtains the specimen. They are completed by the filler when the filler obtains the specimen.

OBR-7-observation date/time and *OBR-8-observation end date/time* (flagged with #) are the physiologically relevant times. In the case of an observation on a specimen, they represent the start and end of the specimen collection. In the case of an observation obtained directly from a subject (e.g., BP, Chest X-ray), they represent the start and end time of the observation.

4.5.3.1 OBR-1 Set ID – OBR (SI) 00237

Definition: For the first order transmitted, the sequence number shall be 1; for the second order, it shall be 2; and so on.

4.5.3.2 OBR-2 Placer order number (EI) 00216

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is identical to *ORC-2-Placer Order Number*.

This field is a special case of the Entity Identifier data type (Section 2.A.28). The first component is a string that identifies an individual order (e.g., OBR). A limit of fifteen (15) characters is suggested but not required. It is assigned by the placer (ordering application). An implementation is HL7 compliant when the number of characters for this field is increased to accommodate applications that require a greater number of characters for the Placer order number. It identifies an order uniquely among all orders from a

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

particular ordering application. The second through fourth components contain the application ID of the placing application in the same form as the HD data type (Section 2.A.36, "HD - Hierarchic designator"). The second component, namespace ID, is a user-defined coded value that will be uniquely associated with an application. A limit of six (6) characters is suggested but not required. A given institution or group of intercommunicating institutions should establish a unique list of applications that may be potential placers and fillers and assign unique application IDs. The components are separated by component delimiters.

See *ORC-2-placer order number* (Section 4.5.1.2) for information on when this field must be valued.

A given institution or group of intercommunicating institutions should establish a list of applications that may be potential placers and fillers of orders and assign each a unique application ID. The application ID list becomes one of the institution's master dictionary lists that is documented in Chapter 8. Since third-party applications (those other than the placer and filler of an order) can send and receive ORM and ORR messages, the placer application ID in this field may not be the same as any sending and receiving application on the network (as identified in the MSH segment).

ORC-2-placer order number is the same as *OBR-2-placer order number*. If the placer order number is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR and vice versa. If both fields, *ORC-2-placer order number* and *OBR-2-placer order number,* are valued, they must contain the same value. When results are transmitted in an ORU message, an ORC is not required, and the identifying placer order number must be present in the OBR segments.

These rules apply to the few other fields that are present in both ORC and OBR for upward compatibility (e.g., quantity/timing, parent numbers, ordering provider, and ordering call back numbers).

4.5.3.3 OBR-3 Filler Order Number (EI) 00217

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the order number associated with the filling application. This is a permanent identifier for an order and its associated observations. It is a special case of the Entity Identifier data type (see Chapter 2, Section 2.A.28, "EI - entity identifier").

The first component is a string that identifies an individual order segment (e.g., OBR). It is assigned by the order filling (receiving) application. It identifies an order uniquely among all orders from a particular filling application (e.g., clinical laboratory).). This uniqueness must persist over time.

The second through fourth components contain the filler application ID, in the form of the HD data type (see Section 2.A.36, "HD - hierarchic designator"). The second component is a user-defined coded value that uniquely defines the application from other applications on the network. A limit of six (6) characters is suggested but not required. The second component of the filler order number always identifies the actual filler of an order.

See *ORC-3-filler order number* for information on when this field must be valued.

OBR-3-filler order number is identical to *ORC-3-filler order number*. If the filler order number is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR. (This rule is the same for other identical fields in the ORC and OBR and promotes upward and ASTM compatibility.) This is particularly important when results are transmitted in an ORU message. In this case, the ORC is not required and the identifying filler order number must be present in the OBR segments.

The filler order number (*OBR-3* or *ORC-3*) also uniquely identifies an order and its associated observations. For example, suppose that an institution collects observations from several ancillary applications into a common database and this common database is queried by yet another application for

observations. In this case, the filler order number and placer order number transmitted by the common database application would be that of the original filler and placer, respectively, rather than a new one assigned by the common database application.

Similarly, if a third-party application, not the filler or placer, of an order were authorized to modify the status of an order (say, cancel it), the third-party application would send the filler an ORM message containing an ORC segment with *ORC-1-order control* equal to “CA” and containing the original placer order number and filler order number, rather than assign either itself.

4.5.3.4 OBR-4 Universal Service Identifier (CE) 00238

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier code for the requested observation/test/battery. This can be based on local and/or "universal" codes. We recommend the "universal" procedure identifier. The structure of this CE data type is described in the control section.

4.5.3.5 OBR-5 Priority - OBR (ID) 00239

Definition: ***This field has been retained for backward compatibility only***. It is not used. Previously priority (e.g., STAT, ASAP), but this information is carried as the sixth component of *OBR-27-quantity/timing*.

4.5.3.6 OBR-6 Requested Date/Time (TS) 00240

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: ***This field has been retained for backward compatibility only***. It is not used. Previously requested date/time. This information is now carried in the fourth component of the *OBR-27-quantity/timing*.

4.5.3.7 OBR-7 Observation Date/Time (TS) 00241

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the clinically relevant date/time of the observation. In the case of observations taken directly from a subject, it is the actual date and time the observation was obtained. In the case of a specimen-associated study, this field shall represent the date and time the specimen was collected or obtained. (This is a results-only field except when the placer or a third party has already drawn the specimen.) This field is conditionally required. When the OBR is transmitted as part of a report message, the field **must** be filled in. If it is transmitted as part of a request **and** a sample has been sent along as part of the request, this field must be filled in because this specimen time is the physiologically relevant date/time of the observation.

4.5.3.8 OBR-8 Observation End Date/Time (TS) 00242

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the end date and time of a study or timed specimen collection. If an observation takes place over a substantial period of time, it will indicate when the observation period ended. For observations made at a point in time, it will be null. This is a results field except when the placer or a party other than the filler has already drawn the specimen.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.5.3.9 OBR-9 Collection Volume (CQ) 00243

```
Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
          System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: For laboratory tests, the collection volume is the volume of a specimen. The default unit is ML. Specifically, units should be expressed in the ISO Standard unit abbreviations (ISO-2955, 1977). This is a results-only field except when the placer or a party has already drawn the specimen. (See Chapter 7 Section 7.4.2.6 for a full discussion regarding units.)

4.5.3.10 OBR-10 Collector Identifier (XCN) 00244

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
          Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
          (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
          <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
          <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
          Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
          (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
          <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
          (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
          <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
          Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
          Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
          Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
          & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
          <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

          Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: When a specimen is required for the study, this field will identify the person, department, or facility that collected the specimen. Either name or ID code, or both, may be present.

4.5.3.11 OBR-11 Specimen Action Code (ID) 00245

Definition: This field identifies the action to be taken with respect to the specimens that accompany or precede this order. The purpose of this field is to further qualify (when appropriate) the general action indicated by the order control code contained in the accompanying ORC segment. For example, when a new order (ORC - "NW") is sent to the lab, this field would be used to tell the lab whether or not to collect the specimen ("L" or "O"). Refer to *HL7 Table 0065 - Specimen Action Code* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0065 - Specimen Action Code

Value	Description	Comment
A	Add ordered tests to the existing specimen	
G	Generated order; reflex order	
L	Lab to obtain specimen from patient	
O	Specimen obtained by service other than Lab	
P	Pending specimen; Order sent prior to delivery	
R	Revised order	
S	Schedule the tests specified below	

4.5.3.12 OBR-12 Danger Code (CE) 00246

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the code and/or text indicating any known or suspected patient or specimen hazards, e.g., patient with active tuberculosis or blood from a hepatitis patient. Either code and/or text may be absent. However, the code is always placed in the first component position and any free text in the second component. Thus, free text without a code must be preceded by a component delimiter.

4.5.3.13 OBR-13 Relevant Clinical Information (ST) 00247

Definition: This field contains the additional clinical information about the patient or specimen. This field is used to report the suspected diagnosis and clinical findings on requests for interpreted diagnostic studies. Examples include reporting the amount of inspired carbon dioxide for blood gasses, the point in the menstrual cycle for cervical pap tests, and other conditions that influence test interpretations. For some orders this information may be sent on a more structured form as a series of OBX segments (see Chapter 7) that immediately follow the order segment.

4.5.3.14 OBR-14 Specimen Received Date/Time (TS) 00248

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: *This field has been retained for backward compatibility only.* As of version 2.5, in messages where the SPM segment is present, the use of *SPM-18 Specimen Received Date/Time* is favored over this field

For observations requiring a specimen, the specimen received date/time is the actual login time at the diagnostic service. This field must contain a value when the order is accompanied by a specimen, or when the observation required a specimen **and** the message is a report.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.5.3.15 OBR-15 Specimen Source (SPS) 00249

```
Components:  <Specimen Source Name or Code (CWE)> ^ <Additives (CWE)> ^ <Specimen
             Collection Method (TX)> ^ <Body Site (CWE)> ^ <Site Modifier (CWE)> ^
             <Collection Method Modifier Code (CWE)> ^ <Specimen Role (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Specimen Source Name or Code (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)>
             & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
             Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
             Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
             Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Additives (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
             System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
             of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
             <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Body Site (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
             System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
             of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
             <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Site Modifier (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
             Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
             & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID (ST)>
             & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Collection Method Modifier Code (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
             (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
             <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
             <Original Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Specimen Role (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
             Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
             & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID (ST)>
             & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: ***This field has been retained for backward compatibility only.*** As of version 2.5, in messages where the SPM segment is present, the use of *SPM Specimen segment* is favored over this field

This field identifies the site where the specimen should be obtained or where the service should be performed.

Veterinary medicine may choose the tables supported for the components of this field as decided by their industry.

The first component contains the specimen source name or code (as a CE data type component). (Even in the case of observations whose name implies the source, a source may be required, e.g., blood culture-heart blood.) Refer to *HL7 Table 0070 - Specimen Source Codes* for valid entries.

The second component should include free text additives to the specimen such as Heparin, EDTA, or Oxlate, when applicable.

The third is a free text component describing the method of collection when that information is a part of the order. When the method of collection is logically an observation result, it should be included as a result segment.

The fourth component specifies the body site from which the specimen was obtained, and the fifth is the site modifier. For example, the site could be antecubital fossa, and the site modifier "right." The

components of the CE fields become subcomponents. Refer to User-Defined Table 0163 - Body Site for valid entries.

The sixth component indicates whether the specimen is frozen as part of the collection method. Suggested values are F (Frozen); R (Refrigerated). If the component is blank, the specimen is assumed to be at room temperature.

Refer to HL7 Table 0070 Specimen Source Codes for valid values

The 7th component indicates the role of the sample. Refer to *User-defined Table 0369 – Specimen Role* for suggested values. Each of these values is normally identifiable by the systems and its components and can influence processing and data management related to the specimen.

This is a user-defined table with following recommended values. If the value is blank, it is assumed to be a patient specimen.

User-defined Table 0369 - Specimen Role

Value	Description	Comment
P	Patient (default if blank component value)	
Q	Control specimen	
C	Calibrator	
B	Blind Sample	
R	Replicate (of patient sample as a control)	

4.5.3.16 OBR-16 Ordering Provider (XCN) 00226

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
             Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
             (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
             <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
             <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
             Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
             (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
             <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
             (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
             <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
             Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
             Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
             Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
             & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
             <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
             (ID)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the provider who ordered the test. Either the ID code or the name, or both, may be present. This is the same as *ORC-12-ordering provider*.

4.5.3.17 OBR-17 Order Callback Phone Number (XTN) 00250

```
Components:  <DEPRECATED-Telephone Number (ST)> ^ <Telecommunication Use Code (ID)> ^
          <Telecommunication Equipment Type (ID)> ^ <Email Address (ST)> ^ <Country
          Code (NM)> ^ <Area/City Code (NM)> ^ <Local Number (NM)> ^ <Extension
          (NM)> ^ <Any Text (ST)> ^ <Extension Prefix (ST)> ^ <Speed Dial Code (ST)>
          ^ <Unformatted Telephone number  (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the telephone number for reporting a status or a result using the standard format with extension and/or beeper number when applicable.

4.5.3.18 OBR-18 Placer Field 1 (ST) 00251

Definition: This field is user field #1. Text sent by the placer will be returned with the results.

4.5.3.19 OBR-19 Placer Field 2 (ST) 00252

Definition: This field is similar to placer field #1.

4.5.3.20 OBR-20 Filler Field 1 (ST) 00253

Definition: This field is definable for any use by the filler (diagnostic service).

4.5.3.21 OBR-21 Filler Field 2 (ST) 00254

Definition: This field is similar to filler field #1.

4.5.3.22 OBR-22 Results Rpt/Status Chng - Date/Time (TS) 00255

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the date/time when the results were reported or status changed. This field is used to indicate the date and time that the results are composed into a report and released, or that a status, as defined in *ORC*-5 *order status*, is entered or changed. (This is a results field only.) When other applications (such as office or clinical database applications) query the laboratory application for untransmitted results, the information in this field may be used to control processing on the communications link. Usually, the ordering service would want only those results for which the reporting date/time is greater than the date/time the inquiring application last received results.

4.5.3.23 OBR-23 Charge to Practice (MOC) 00256

```
Components:  <Monetary Amount (MO)> ^ <Charge Code (CE)>

Subcomponents for Monetary Amount (MO):  <Quantity (NM)> & <Denomination (ID)>

Subcomponents for Charge Code (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
          System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the charge to the ordering entity for the studies performed when applicable. The first component is a dollar amount when known by the filler. The second is a charge code when known by the filler (results only).

4.5.3.24 OBR-24 Diagnostic Serv Sect ID (ID) 00257

Definition: This field is the section of the diagnostic service where the observation was performed. If the study was performed by an outside service, the identification of that service should be recorded here. Refer to *HL7 Table 0074 - Diagnostic Service Section ID* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0074 - Diagnostic Service Section ID

Value	Description	Comment
AU	Audiology	
BG	Blood Gases	
BLB	Blood Bank	
CUS	Cardiac Ultrasound	
CTH	Cardiac Catheterization	
CT	CAT Scan	
CH	Chemistry	
CP	Cytopathology	
EC	Electrocardiac (e.g., EKG, EEC, Holter)	
EN	Electroneuro (EEG, EMG,EP,PSG)	
HM	Hematology	
ICU	Bedside ICU Monitoring	
IMM	Immunology	
LAB	Laboratory	
MB	Microbiology	
MCB	Mycobacteriology	
MYC	Mycology	
NMS	Nuclear Medicine Scan	
NMR	Nuclear Magnetic Resonance	
NRS	Nursing Service Measures	
OUS	OB Ultrasound	
OT	Occupational Therapy	
OTH	Other	
OSL	Outside Lab	
PHR	Pharmacy	
PT	Physical Therapy	
PHY	Physician (Hx. Dx, admission note, etc.)	
PF	Pulmonary Function	
RAD	Radiology	
RX	Radiograph	
RUS	Radiology Ultrasound	
RC	Respiratory Care (therapy)	
RT	Radiation Therapy	
SR	Serology	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value	Description	Comment
SP	Surgical Pathology	
TX	Toxicology	
VUS	Vascular Ultrasound	
VR	Virology	
XRC	Cineradiograph	

4.5.3.25 OBR-25 Result Status (ID) 00258

Definition: This field contains the status of results for this order. This conditional field is required whenever the OBR is contained in a report message. It is not required as part of an initial order.

There are two methods of sending status information. If the status is that of the entire order, use *ORC-15-order effective date/time* and *ORC-5-order status*. If the status pertains to the order detail segment, use *OBR-25-result status* and *OBR-22-results rpt/status chng - date/time*. If both are present, the OBR values override the ORC values.

This field would typically be used in a response to an order status query where the level of detail requested does not include the OBX segments. When the individual status of each result is necessary, *OBX-11-observ result status* may be used. Refer to *HL7 Table 0123 - Result Status* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0123 - Result Status

Value	Description	Comment
O	Order received; specimen not yet received	
I	No results available; specimen received, procedure incomplete	
S	No results available; procedure scheduled, but not done	
A	Some, but not all, results available	
P	Preliminary: A verified early result is available, final results not yet obtained	
C	Correction to results	
R	Results stored; not yet verified	
F	Final results; results stored and verified. Can only be changed with a corrected result.	
X	No results available; Order canceled.	
Y	No order on record for this test. (Used only on queries)	
Z	No record of this patient. (Used only on queries)	

4.5.3.26 OBR-26 Parent Result (PRL) 00259

```
Components:  <Parent Observation Identifier (CE)> ^ <Parent Observation Sub-identifier
          (ST)> ^ <Parent Observation Value Descriptor (TX)>

Subcomponents for Parent Observation Identifier (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)>
          & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is defined to make it available for other types of linkages (e.g., toxicology). This important information, together with the information in *OBR-29-parent*, uniquely identifies the parent result's OBX segment related to this order. The value of this OBX segment in the parent result is the organism or chemical species about which this battery reports. For example, if the current battery is an antimicrobial susceptibility, the parent results identified OBX contains a result which identifies the organism on which the susceptibility was run. This indirect linkage is preferred because the name of the organism in the parent result may undergo several preliminary values prior to finalization.

The third component may be used to record the name of the microorganism identified by the parent result directly. The organism in this case should be identified exactly as it is in the parent culture.

We emphasize that this field does not take the entire result field from the parent. It is meant only for the text name of the organism or chemical subspecies identified. This field is included only to provide a method for linking back to the parent result for those systems that could not generate unambiguous Observation IDs and sub-IDs.

This field is present only when the parent result is identified by *OBR-29-parent* and the parent spawns child orders for each of many results. (See Chapter 7 for more details about this linkage.)

A second mode of conveying this information is to use a standard observation result segment (OBX). If more than one organism is present, *OBX-4-observation sub-ID* is used to distinguish them. In this case, the first OBX with subID N will contain a value identifying the Nth microorganism, and each additional OBX with subID N will contain susceptibility values for a given antimicrobial test on this organism.

4.5.3.27 OBR-27 Quantity/timing (TQ) 00221

```
Components:  <Quantity (CQ)> ^ <Interval (RI)> ^ <Duration (ST)> ^ <Start Date/Time
           (TS)> ^ <End Date/Time (TS)> ^ <Priority (ST)> ^ <Condition (ST)> ^ <Text
           (TX)> ^ <Conjunction (ID)> ^ <Order Sequencing (OSD)> ^ <Occurrence
           Duration (CE)> ^ <Total Occurrences (NM)>

Subcomponents for Quantity (CQ):  <Quantity (NM)> & <Units (CE)>

           Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Interval (RI):  <Repeat Pattern (IS)> & <Explicit Time Interval
           (ST)>

Subcomponents for Start Date/Time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
           Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for End Date/Time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
           (ID)>

Subcomponents for Order Sequencing (OSD):  <Sequence/Results Flag (ID)> & <Placer
           Order Number: Entity Identifier (ST)> & <Placer Order Number: Namespace ID
           (IS)> & <Filler Order Number: Entity Identifier (ST)> & <Filler Order
           Number: Namespace ID (IS)> & <Sequence Condition Value (ST)> & <Maximum
           Number of Repeats (NM)> & <Placer Order Number: Universal ID (ST)> &
           <Placer Order Number: Universal ID Type (ID)> & <Filler Order Number:
           Universal ID (ST)> & <Filler Order Number: Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Occurrence Duration (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name
           of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text
           (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: ***This field is retained for backward compatibility only.*** The reader is referred to the TQ1 and TQ2 segments described in sections 4.5.4 and 4.5.5 respectively.

This field contains information about how many services to perform at one service time and how often the service times are repeated, and to fix duration of the request

4.5.3.28 OBR-28 Result Copies To (XCN) 00260

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
           Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
           (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
           <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
           <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
            Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
            (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
            <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
            (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
            <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

      Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
            Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
            Partner/Spouse (ST)>

      Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
            & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
            & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
            Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
            & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

      Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
            <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

            Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

      Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
            (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
            Precision (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
            <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
            Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
            Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
            Text (ST)>

      Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
            (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
            <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
            System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
            <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the people who are to receive copies of the results. By local convention, either the ID number or the name may be absent.

4.5.3.29 OBR-29 Parent (EIP) 00261

```
      Components:  <Placer Assigned Identifier (EI)> ^ <Filler Assigned Identifier (EI)>

      Subcomponents for Placer Assigned Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
            <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Filler Assigned Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
            <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is identical to *ORC-8-parent*. This field relates a child to its parent when a parent-child relationship exists. For example, observations that are spawned by previous observations, e.g., antimicrobial susceptibilities spawned by blood cultures, need to record the parent (blood culture) filler order number here. The parent-child mechanism is described under the order control field notes (see Section *4.5.1.1.1*, "*Table notes for order control codes of ORC*"). It is required when the order is a child.

4.5.3.30 OBR-30 Transportation Mode (ID) 00262

Definition: This field identifies how (or whether) to transport a patient, when applicable. Refer to *HL7 Table 0124 - Transportation Mode* for valid codes.

HL7 Table 0124 - Transportation Mode

Value	Description	Comment
CART	Cart - patient travels on cart or gurney	
PORT	The examining device goes to patient's location	
WALK	Patient walks to diagnostic service	
WHLC	Wheelchair	

4.5.3.31 OBR-31 Reason for Study (CE) 00263

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the code or text using the conventions for coded fields given in the Control chapter (Chapter 2). This is required for some studies to obtain proper reimbursement.

4.5.3.32 OBR-32 Principal Result Interpreter (NDL) 00264

```
Components:  <Name (CNN)> ^ <Start Date/time (TS)> ^ <End Date/time (TS)> ^ <Point of
             Care  (IS)> ^ <Room  (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^ <Location
             Status  (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building  (IS)> ^ <Floor
             (IS)>

Subcomponents for Name (CNN):  <ID Number (ST)> & <Family Name (ST)> & <Given Name
             (ST)> & <Second and Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> &
             <Suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> & <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> & <Degree
             (e.g., MD (IS)> & <Source Table (IS)> & <Assigning Authority   - Namespace
             ID (IS)> & <Assigning Authority  - Universal ID (ST)> & <Assigning
             Authority  - Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Start Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
             Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for End Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
             (ID)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the physician or other clinician who interpreted the observation and is responsible for the report content.

4.5.3.33 OBR-33 Assistant Result Interpreter (NDL) 00265

```
Components:  <Name (CNN)> ^ <Start Date/time (TS)> ^ <End Date/time (TS)> ^ <Point of
             Care  (IS)> ^ <Room  (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^ <Location
             Status  (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building  (IS)> ^ <Floor
             (IS)>

Subcomponents for Name (CNN):  <ID Number (ST)> & <Family Name (ST)> & <Given Name
             (ST)> & <Second and Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> &
             <Suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> & <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> & <Degree
             (e.g., MD (IS)> & <Source Table (IS)> & <Assigning Authority   - Namespace
             ID (IS)> & <Assigning Authority  - Universal ID (ST)> & <Assigning
             Authority  - Universal ID Type (ID)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
Subcomponents for Start Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for End Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
          <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the clinical observer who assisted with the interpretation of this study.

4.5.3.34 OBR-34 Technician (NDL) 00266

```
Components:  <Name (CNN)> ^ <Start Date/time (TS)> ^ <End Date/time (TS)> ^ <Point of
          Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^ <Location Status
          (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^ <Floor (IS)>

Subcomponents for Name (CNN):  <ID Number (ST)> & <Family Name (ST)> & <Given Name
          (ST)> & <Second and Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> &
          <Suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> & <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> & <Degree
          (e.g., MD (IS)> & <Source Table (IS)> & <Assigning Authority   - Namespace
          ID (IS)> & <Assigning Authority  - Universal ID (ST)> & <Assigning
          Authority  - Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Start Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for End Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
          <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the performing technician.

4.5.3.35 OBR-35 Transcriptionist (NDL) 00267

```
Components:  <Name (CNN)> ^ <Start Date/time (TS)> ^ <End Date/time (TS)> ^ <Point of
          Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^ <Location Status
          (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^ <Floor (IS)>

Subcomponents for Name (CNN):  <ID Number (ST)> & <Family Name (ST)> & <Given Name
          (ST)> & <Second and Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> &
          <Suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> & <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> & <Degree
          (e.g., MD (IS)> & <Source Table (IS)> & <Assigning Authority   - Namespace
          ID (IS)> & <Assigning Authority  - Universal ID (ST)> & <Assigning
          Authority  - Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Start Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for End Date/time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
          <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the report transcriber.

4.5.3.36 OBR-36 Scheduled Date/Time (TS) 00268

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the date/time the filler scheduled an observation, when applicable (e.g., action code in *OBR-11-specimen action code* = "S"). This is a result of a request to schedule a particular test and provides a way to inform the placer of the date/time a study is scheduled (result only).

4.5.3.37 OBR-37 Number of Sample Containers (NM) 01028

Definition: This field identifies the number of containers for a given sample. For sample receipt verification purposes; may be different from the total number of samples which accompany the order.

4.5.3.38 OBR-38 Transport Logistics of Collected Sample (CE) 01029

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the means by which a sample reaches the diagnostic service provider. This information is to aid the lab in scheduling or interpretation of results. Possible answers: routine transport van, public postal service, etc. If coded, requires a user-defined table.

4.5.3.39 OBR-39 Collector's Comment (CE) 01030

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is for reporting additional comments related to the sample. If coded, requires a user-defined table. If only free text is reported, it is placed in the second component with a null in the first component, e.g., `^difficult clotting after venipuncture and ecchymosis`.

4.5.3.40 OBR-40 Transport Arrangement Responsibility (CE) 01031

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is an indicator of who is responsible for arranging transport to the planned diagnostic service. Examples: Requester, Provider, Patient. If coded, requires a user-defined table.

4.5.3.41 OBR-41 Transport Arranged (ID) 01032

Definition: This field is an indicator of whether transport arrangements are known to have been made. Refer to *HL7 Table 0224 - Transport Arranged* for valid codes.

HL7 Table 0224 - Transport Arranged

Value	Description	Comment
A	Arranged	
N	Not Arranged	
U	Unknown	

4.5.3.42 OBR-42 Escort Required (ID) 01033

Definition: This field is an indicator that the patient needs to be escorted to the diagnostic service department. Note: The nature of the escort requirements should be stated in *OBR-43-planned patient transport comment*. See *HL7 Table 0225 - Escort Required* for valid values.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

HL7 Table 0225 - Escort Required

Value	Description	Comment
R	Required	
N	Not Required	
U	Unknown	

4.5.3.43 OBR-43 Planned Patient Transport Comment (CE) 01034

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the code or free text comments on special requirements for the transport of the patient to the diagnostic service department. If coded, requires a user-defined table.

4.5.3.44 OBR-44 Procedure Code (CE) 00393

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains a unique identifier assigned to the procedure, if any, associated with the charge. Refer to *User-defined table 0088 - Procedure code* for suggested values. This field is a CE data type for compatibility with clinical and ancillary systems.

4.5.3.45 OBR-45 Procedure Code Modifier (CE) 01316

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the procedure code modifier to the procedure code reported in *OBR-44-procedure code*, when applicable. Procedure code modifiers are defined by regulatory agencies such as CMS and the AMA. Multiple modifiers may be reported. *The modifiers are sequenced in priority according to user entry. In the USA, this is a requirement of the UB and the 1500 claim forms. Multiple modifiers are allowed and the order placed on the form affects reimbursement.* Refer to *user-defined table 0340 - Procedure code modifier* for suggested values.

Usage Rule: This field can only be used if OBR-44-procedure code contains certain procedure codes that require a modifier in order to be billed or performed. For example, in the USA, HCPCS codes that require a modifier to be precise.

User-defined Table 0340 – Procedure code modifier

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

4.5.3.46 OBR-46 Placer Supplemental Service Information (CE) 01474

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains supplemental service information sent from the placer system to the filler system for the universal procedure code reported in *OBR-4 Universal Service ID*. This field will be used to provide ordering information detail that is not available in other, specific fields in the OBR segment. Multiple supplemental service information elements may be reported. Refer to *User-defined Table 0411 - Supplemental service information values*.

This field can be used to describe details such as whether study is to be done on the right or left, for example where the study is of the arm and the order master file does not distinguish right from left or whether the study is to be done with or without contrast (when the order master file does not make such distinctions).

4.5.3.47 OBR-47 Filler Supplemental Service Information (CE) 01475

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains supplemental service information sent from the filler system to the placer system for the procedure code reported in *OBR-4 Universal Service ID*. This field will be used to report ordering information details that is not available in other, specific fields in the OBR segment. Typically it will reflect the same information as was sent to the filler system in *OBR-46-Placer supplemental* information unless the order was modified in which case the filler system will report what was actually performed using this field. Multiple supplemental service information elements may be reported. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0411 - Supplemental Service Information Values*.

This field can be used to describe details such as whether study is to be done on the right or left, for example where the study is of the arm and the order master file does not distinguish right from left or whether the study is to be done with or without contrast (when the order master file does not make such distinctions).

User-Defined Table 0411 - Supplemental Service Information Values

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values Individual implementations may use vocabularies such as the SNOMED DICOM Micro-glossary (SDM) or private (local) entries.	

4.5.3.48 OBR-48 Medically Necessary Duplicate Procedure Reason (CWE) 01646

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field is used to document why the procedure found in *OBR-44 - Procedure Code* is a duplicate of one ordered/charged previously for the same patient within the same date of service and has been determined to be medically necessary. The reason may be coded or it may be a free text entry.

This field is intended to provide financial systems information on who to bill for duplicate procedures.

Refer to *User-Defined Table 0476 – Medically Necessary Duplicate Procedure Reason* for suggested values. User-defined Table 0476 – Medically Necessary Duplicate Procedure Reason

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

4.5.3.49 OBR-49 Result Handling (IS) 01647

Definition: Transmits information regarding the handling of the result. For example, an order may specify that the result (e.g., an x-ray film) should be given to the patient for return to the requestor. Refer to *User-defined Table 0507 Observation Result Handling* for suggested values. If this field is not populated then routine handling is implied.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

User-defined Table 0507 – Observation Result Handling

Value	Description	Comment
F	Film-with-patient	
N	Notify provider when ready	

4.5.4 TQ1 – Timing/Quantity Segment

The TQ1 segment is used to specify the complex timing of events and actions such as those that occur in order management and scheduling systems. This segment determines the quantity, frequency, priority, and timing of a service. By allowing the segment to repeat, it is possible to have service requests that vary the quantity, frequency and priority of a service request over time.

Use cases showing when TQ1 may need to repeat:

d) Cardiac enzymes STAT and then q 4 hours

e) Streptokinase studies, draw 1st Stat and run Stat, then draw q 4 hours and run Stat

f) Gentamicin 100mg Now and 80mg q12h second dose (First 80mg dose) given exactly 12 hours after the 100mg dose. (Might be 2 service requests)

g) Activase 15mg bolus Stat then 50mg over 30 minutes, then 35mg over the next 60 minutes. (Might be 2 service requests)

h) Imodium 4mg (2 caps) po initially, then 2mg (1cap) after each unformed stool to a maximum of 16 mg per day. (Might be 2 service requests)

i) Zithromax 500mg (2tabs) po on the first day then 250mg (1tab) po qd for 5 days. (Might be 2 service requests)

j) Zyban (Bupropion) Start 150mg po qam x 3 days, then increase to 150mg po bid for 7 to 12 weeks.

k) Colchicine 1mg (2 tabs) po now then 1 tablet q1 to 2 hours until pain relief or undesirable side effects (Diarrhea, GI upset) (Might be 2 service requests)

l) doxycylcine 100mg po bid on the first day then 100mg po qd.

m) scopolamine, xxx mg, 1 hour before surgery. Relative time = -1^hour, priority = P (preop), or alternately repeat pattern = P1H^Preop, 1 Hour before Surgery^99LocalCode, Relative time would be empty and priority would be P (preop).

HL7 Attribute Table – TQ1 – Timing/Quantity

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			01627	Set ID - TQ1
2	20	CQ	O			01628	Quantity
3	540	RPT	O	Y	0335	01629	Repeat Pattern
4	20	TM	O	Y		01630	Explicit Time
5	20	CQ	O	Y		01631	Relative Time and Units
6	20	CQ	O			01632	Service Duration
7	26	TS	O			01633	Start date/time
8	26	TS	O			01634	End date/time
9	250	CWE	O	Y	0485	01635	Priority
10	250	TX	O			01636	Condition text
11	250	TX	O			01637	Text instruction
12	10	ID	C		0427	01638	Conjunction

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
13	20	CQ	O			01639	Occurrence duration
14	10	NM	O			01640	Total occurrence's

4.5.4.0 TQ1 field definitions

4.5.4.1 TQ1-1 Set ID - TQ1 (SI) 01627

Definition: For the first timing specification transmitted, the sequence number shall be 1; for the second timing specification, it shall be 2; and so on.

4.5.4.2 TQ1-2 Quantity (CQ) 01628

```
Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
          System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the numeric quantity of the service that should be provided at each service interval. For example, if two blood cultures are to be obtained every 4 hours, the quantity would be 2 or if three units of blood are to be typed and cross-matched, the quantity would be 3. The default value for this field is 1.

If multiple identical services are to be requested, it is strongly recommended that multiple service requests be placed; giving each service request its own unique placer/filler number.

4.5.4.3 TQ1-3 Repeat Pattern (RPT) 01629

```
Components:  <Repeat Pattern Code (CWE)> ^ <Calendar Alignment (ID)> ^ <Phase Range
          Begin Value (NM)> ^ <Phase Range End Value (NM)> ^ <Period Quantity (NM)>
          ^ <Period Units (IS)> ^ <Institution Specified Time (ID)> ^ <Event (ID)> ^
          <Event Offset Quantity (NM)> ^ <Event Offset Units (IS)> ^ <General Timing
          Specification (GTS)>

Subcomponents for Repeat Pattern Code (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID
          (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: The repeating frequency with which the treatment is to be administered. It is similar to the frequency and SIG code tables used in order entry systems.

This field may be repeated to build up more complex repeat patterns. For example, daily at bedtime can be represent as "|QD~HS|".

When the quantity timing specification must change to a different repeat pattern after some period of time, a new TQ1 segment must be used to show the new repeat pattern. Note that the end date of the current TQ1 will show when the current timing specification ends, and the start date of the next TQ1 shows when the new timing specification begins. The Conjunction field, TQ1-12 determines if the next TQ1 segment is to be performed sequentially or in parallel.

4.5.4.4 TQ1-4 Explicit Time (TM) 01630

Definition: This field explicitly lists the actual times referenced by the code in TQ1-3. This field will be used to clarify the TQ1-3 in cases where the actual administration times vary within an institution. If the time of the service request spans more than a single day, this field is only practical if the same times of administration occur for each day of the service request. If the actual start time of the service request (as

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

given by TQ1-7) is after the first explicit time, the first administration is taken to be the first explicit time after the start time. In the case where the patient moves to a location having a different set of explicit times, the existing service request may be updated with a new quantity/timing segment showing the changed explicit times.

Usage Note: This field is not valued if a *Repeat Pattern* is not present.

4.5.4.5 TQ1-5 Relative Time and Units (CQ) 01631

```
Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
          System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is used to define the interval between schedules for service request or bottle records. If this field contains a value, it overrides any value in the explicit time interval field. The units component of the CQ data type is constrained to units of time.

Examples:

```
TQ1|1|1|Q1H||60^min&&ANS+  - Q1H is defined with an interval between
   services of 60 minutes

TQ1|1|1|Q6H||6^hr&&ANS+  - Q6H is defined with an interval between
   services of 6 hours

TQ1|1|1|QD||1^d&&ANS+  - QD is defined with an interval between services
   of 1 day
```

4.5.4.6 TQ1-6 Service Duration (CQ) 01632

```
Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
          System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the duration for which the service is requested.

The quantity component of this field must be a positive, non-zero number. The unit's portion of this field is constrained to units of time.

Example: Whirlpool twenty minutes three times per day for 3 days. Three days is the service duration.

```
TQ1|1||TID|||3^d&&ANS+||||||20^min&&ANS+|9<cr>
```

4.5.4.7 TQ1-7 Start Date/Time (TS) 01633

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field may be specified by the requester, in which case it indicates the earliest date/time at which the services should be started. In many cases, however, the start date/time will be implied or will be defined by other fields in the service request record (e.g., urgency - STAT). In such a case, this field will be empty.

The filling service will often record a value in this field after receipt of the service request, however, and compute an end time on the basis of the start date/time for the filling service's internal use.

4.5.4.8 TQ1-8 End Date/Time (TS) 01634

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: When filled in by the requester of the service, this field should contain the latest date/time that the service should be performed. If it has not been performed by the specified time, it should not be performed at all. The requester may not always fill in this value, yet the filling service may fill it in on the basis of the instruction it receives and the actual start time.

Regardless of the value of the end date/time, the service should be stopped at the earliest of the date/times specified by either the duration or the end date/time.

4.5.4.9 TQ1-9 Priority (CWE) 01635

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
           <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
           Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
           System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field describes the urgency of the request. If this field is blank, the default is R. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0485 – Extended Priority Codes* for suggested values.

User-Defined Table 0485 – Extended Priority Codes

Value	Description	Comment
S	Stat	With highest priority
A	ASAP	Fill after S orders
R	Routine	Default
P	Preop	
C	Callback	
T	Timing critical	A request implying that it is critical to come as close as possible to the requested time, e.g., for a trough anti-microbial level.
TS<integer>		Timing critical within <integer> seconds.
TM<integer>		Timing critical within <integer> minutes.
TH<integer>		Timing critical within <integer> hours.
TD<integer>		Timing critical within <integer> days.
TW<integer>		Timing critical within <integer> weeks.
TL<integer>		Timing critical within <integer> months.
PRN	As needed	

4.5.4.10 TQ1-10 Condition Text (TX) 01636

Definition: This is a free text field that describes the conditions under which the drug is to be given. For example, **PRN pain**, or **to keep blood pressure below 110**.

The presence of text in this field should be taken to mean that human review is needed to determine the how and/or when this drug should be given.

For complex codified conditions see the TQ2 segment below.

4.5.4.11 TQ1-11 Text Instruction (TX) 01637

Definition: This field is a full text version of the instruction (optional).

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.5.4.12 TQ1-12 Conjunction (ID) 01638

Definition: This field indicates that a second TQ1 segment is to follow. Refer To *HL7 Table 0472 – TQ Conjunction ID* for allowed values.

HL7 Table 0472 - TQ Conjunction ID

Value	Description	Comment
S	Synchronous	Do the next specification after this one (unless otherwise constrained by the following fields: *TQ1-7-start date/time* and *TQ1-8-end date/time*). An "S" specification implies that the second timing sequence follows the first, e.g., when a service request is written to measure blood pressure Q15 minutes for the 1st hour, then every 2 hours for the next day.
A	Asynchronous	Do the next specification in parallel with this one (unless otherwise constrained by the following fields: *TQ1-7-start date/time* and *TQ1-8-end date/time*). The conjunction of "A" specifies two parallel instructions, as are sometimes used in medication, e.g., prednisone given at 1 tab on Monday, Wednesday, Friday, and at 1/2 tab on Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday, Sunday.
C	Actuation Time	It will be followed by a completion time for the service. This code allows one to distinguish between the time and priority at which a service should be actuated (e.g., blood should be drawn) and the time and priority at which a service should be completed (e.g., results should be reported).

For continuous or periodic services, the point at which the service is actually stopped is determined by the field *TQ1-8 end date/time* and *TQ1-6 duration*, whichever indicates an earlier stopping time. Ordinarily, only one of these fields would be present.

Condition Rule: If the TQ1 segment is repeated in the message, this field must be populated with the appropriate Conjunction code indicating the sequencing of the following TQ1 segment.

4.5.4.13 TQ1-13 Occurrence Duration (CQ) 01639

```
Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
          System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the duration for which a single performance of a service is requested. The quantity component of this field must be a positive, non-zero number when populated. The units component is constrained to be units of time.

Example: Whirlpool twenty minutes three times per day for three days. Twenty minutes is the occurrence duration.

```
TQ1|1||TID|||3^d&&ANS+|||||20^min&&ANS+|9<cr>
```

4.5.4.14 TQ1-14 Total Occurrences (NM) 01640

Definition: This field contains the total number of occurrences of a service that should result from this service request. If both the end date/time (TQ1-8) and the total occurrences are valued and the occurrences would extend beyond the end date/time, then the end date/time takes precedence. Otherwise the number of occurrences takes precedence.

Example: Whirlpool twenty minutes three times per day for three days. The total occurrences would be 9.

```
TQ1|1||TID|||3^d&&ANS+|||||20^min&&ANS+|9<cr>
```

4.5.5 TQ2 – Timing/Quantity Relationship

The TQ2 segment is used to form a relationship between the service request the TQ1/TQ2 segments are associated with, and other service requests. The TQ2 segment will link the current service request with one or more other service requests.

There are many situations, such as the creation of a service request for a group of intravenous (IV) solutions, where the sequence of the individual intravenous solutions (each a service in itself) needs to be specified, e.g., hyperalimentation with multi-vitamins in every third bottle.

There are other situations where part of the service request's instructions contains a results condition of some type, such as "PRN pain." There is currently a free text "condition" field of *TQ1-10 (Condition text)* which allows any condition to be specified. However, to support a fully encoded version of service request sequencing, or results condition, the TQ2, Timing/Quantity Relationship segment has been defined.

HL7 Attribute Table – TQ2 – Timing/Quantity Relationship

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			01648	Set ID - TQ2
2	1	ID	O		0503	01649	Sequence/Results Flag
3	22	EI	C	Y		01650	Related Placer Number
4	22	EI	C	Y		01651	Related Filler Number
5	22	EI	C	Y		01652	Related Placer Group Number
6	2	ID	C		0504	01653	Sequence Condition Code
7	1	ID	C		0505	01654	Cyclic Entry/Exit Indicator
8	20	CQ	O			01655	Sequence Condition Time Interval
9	10	NM	O			01656	Cyclic Group Maximum Number of Repeats
10	1	ID	C		0506	01657	Special Service Request Relationship

TQ2 Usage notes

a) Cyclic placer service request groups

To implement a cyclic group of four IV service requests using the parent/child paradigm, the parent specifies a custom group of IVs, and the following occurs:

- TQ2 of the second child service request specifies that it follow the first child service request.
- TQ2 of the third child service request specifies that it follow the second child service request.
- TQ2 of the fourth child service request specifies that it follow the third service request.

To repeat the group of four child service requests in a cyclic manner, the following occurs:

- *TQ2* of the first child service request specifies that it is to be executed once without any dependence on the completion of other service requests. Its second execution follows the completion of the fourth service request. See example in Section 4.15.2, "RXO segment field examples."

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

This scheme allows the following to be tracked:

- The status of the whole group of service requests to be reported back at the level of the parent service request.
- The status for each individual IV service request by following the status of the corresponding child service request.

Separate Service requests example:

- The same group of service requests can be sent as a group of four service requests (without a common parent), linked only by the data in their quantity/timing fields. In this case, there is no convenient HL7 method of transmitting the service request status of the group as a whole without transmitting the status of each of the four separate service requests.

b) Inheritance of service request status

Cancellation/discontinuation/hold service request control events:

- This logic implies the normal execution of the referenced predecessor service request. Thus a cancel (or discontinuation or hold) of a predecessor service request implies the cancellation (or discontinuation or hold) of all subsequent service requests in the chain.
- If the referenced service request has been canceled (or discontinued or held), the current service request inherits that same status.
- In the case of hold, the removal of the hold of the predecessor implies a removal of the hold for the given service request (which can then be executed according to the specification in the TQ2 segment).

4.5.5.0 TQ2 field definitions

4.5.5.1 TQ2-1 Set ID – TQ2 (SI) 01648

Definition: For the first timing specification transmitted, the sequence number shall be 1; for the second timing specification, it shall be 2; and so on.

4.5.5.2 TQ2-2 Sequence/Results Flag (ID) 01649

Definition: This flag defines the sequencing relationship between the current service request, and the related service request(s) specified in this TQ2 segment. See *HL7 Table 0503 – Sequence/Results Flag* for values. If not value is present, the S - Sequential is the default value.

HL7 Defined Table 0503 – Sequence/Results Flag

Value	Description	Comment
S	Sequential	
C	Cyclical	Used for indicating a repeating cycle of service requests; for example, individual intravenous solutions used in a cyclical sequence (a.k.a. "Alternating IVs"). This value would be compatible with linking separate service requests or with having all cyclical service request components in a single service request. Likewise, the value would be compatible with either Parent-Child messages or a single service request message to communicate the service requests' sequencing
R	Reserved for future use	

4.5.5.3 TQ2-3 Related Placer Number (EI) 01650

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: The placer numbers of the service request(s) to which this TQ2 segment links the current service request. This field should be populated with the appropriate "Placer number" from the current service request. For orders, the Placer Order Number from ORC-2 is the appropriate "Placer number". Repeats of this field indicate the current service request is related to multiple service requests.

Conditional Rule: At least one of TQ2-3, TQ2-4, TQ2-5 must contain a value.

4.5.5.4 TQ2-4 Related Filler Number (EI) 01651

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: The filler numbers of the service request(s) to which this TQ2 segment links the current service request. This field should be populated with the appropriate "Filler number" from the current service request. For orders, the Filler Order Number from ORC-3 is the appropriate "Filler number". Repeats of this field indicate the current service request is related to multiple service requests.

Conditional Rule: At least one of TQ2-3, TQ2-4, TQ2-5 must contain a value.

4.5.5.5 TQ2-5 Related Placer Group Number (EI) 01652

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: The placer group numbers of the service request(s) to which this TQ2 segment links the current service request. This field should be populated with the appropriate "Placer group number" from the current service request. For orders, the Placer Group Number from ORC-4 is the appropriate "Placer group number". Repeats of this field indicate that the current service request is related to multiple groups of service requests.

Conditional Rule: At least one of TQ2-3, TQ2-4, TQ2-5 must contain a value.

4.5.5.6 TQ2-6 Sequence Condition Code (ID) 01653

Definition: Defines the relationship between the start/end of the related service request(s) (from TQ2-3, TQ2-4, or TQ2-5) and the current service request from ORC-2,3 or 4. See *HL7 Table 0504 – Sequence Condition Code* for allowed values.

Conditional Rule: Either this field or TQ2-10 must be present.

HL7 Table 0504 – Sequence Condition Code

Value	Description	Comment
EE	End related service request(s), end current service request.	
ES	End related service request(s), start current service request.	
SS	Start related service request(s), start current service request.	
SE	Start related service request(s), end current service request.	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.5.5.7 TQ2-7 Cyclic Entry/Exit Indicator (ID) 01654

Definition: Indicates if this service request is the first, last, service request in a cyclic series of service requests. If null or not present, this field indicates that the current service request is neither the first or last service request in a cyclic series of service requests. Refer to *HL7 Table 0505 – Cyclic Entry/Exit Indicator* for allowed values.

Conditional Rule: Should not be populated when TQ2-2 (Sequence/Results Flag) is not equal to a 'C' (cyclic service request).

HL7 Table 0505 – Cyclic Entry/Exit Indicator

Value	Description	
*	The first service request in a cyclic group	
#	The last service request in a cyclic group.	

Example of TQ2 - 6, 7, & 8 Usage:

Example	Translation
...|ES|*|+10^min|...	translates to: execute this service request the first time without evaluating the condition specified in the TQ2 segment; but repeat only its execution when the specified external service request's start or finish date/time has met this condition. This specification generates a repetition of the service request for each iteration of the cycle.

Note: This requires that the requesting application be able to specify the placer/filler/placer group number of the last service request in the cycle in the first service request's quantity/timing specification.

4.5.5.8 TQ2-8 Sequence Condition Time Interval (CQ) 01655

```
Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
          System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: Defines the interval of time between the start/end of the related service request(s) and the start/end of the current service request. The unit's component is constrained to units of time. If this field is not populated, then there should be no interruption between start/ending the current service request, and the related service request(s).

4.5.5.9 TQ2-9 Cyclic Group Maximum Number of Repeats (NM) 01656

Definition: The maximum number of repeats for a cyclic group.

The total number of repeats is constrained by the end date/time of the last repeat or the end date/time of the parent, whichever is first. For example, if the total number or repeats is valued at 10 and the group has already repeated 5 times, the current order will not be repeated again if either the current order, or the prior order in the cycle, has reached its end date/time.

This field is meaningful only when TQ2-2 Sequence/Results Flag is valued with 'C'. However, even in this case this field is optional.

4.5.5.10 TQ2-10 Special Service Request Relationship (ID) 01657

Definition: This defines an additional or alternate relationship between this service request and other service requests. Its primary intended use is for Pharmacy administration service requests, but it may be useful for other domains. See *HL7 Table 0506 – Service Request Relationship* for allowed values.

Conditional Rule: Either this field or TQ2-6 must be present.

HL7 Table 0506 – Service Request Relationship

Value	Description	Comment
N	Nurse prerogative	Where a set of two or more orders exist and the Nurse, or other caregiver, has the prerogative to choose which order will be administered at a particular point in time. For example, Milk of Magnesia PO 30 ml qhs (at bedtime) Dulcolax Supp R @ hs prn Colace 100 mg capsule PO bid The nurse would be administering MOM, but may add the Colace and may also give the Dulcolax Supp as needed to promote and maintain regularity.
C	Compound	A **compound** is an extempo order which may be made up of multiple drugs. For example, many hospitals have a standard item called "Magic Mouthwash". The item is ordered that way by the physician. The extempo items will contain multiple products, such as Maalox, Benadryl, Xylocaine, etc. They will all be mixed together and will be dispensed in a single container.
T	Tapering	A tapering order is one in which the same drug is used, but it has a declining dosage over a number of days. For example, Decadron 0.5 mg is often ordered this way. The order would look like this: Decadron 0.5 mg qid (four times a day) for 2 days, then Decadron 0.5 mg tid (three times a day) for 2 days, then Decadron 0.5 mg bid (twice a day) for 2 days, then Decadron 0.5 mg qd (daily) for 2 days, then stop.
E	Exclusive	An **exclusive** order is an order where only one of the multiple items should be administered at any one dosage time. The nurse may chose between the alternatives, but should only give ONE of them. An example would be: Phenergan 25 mg PO, IM or R q6h prn (orally, intramuscularly, or rectally every 6 hours as needed).
S	Simultaneous	A **simultaneous** order is 2 or more drugs which are ordered to be given at the same time. A common example of this would be Demerol and Phenergan (Phenergan is given with the Demerol to control the nausea that Demerol can cause). The order could be: Demerol 50 mg IM with Phenergan 25 mg IM q4h prn (every 4 hours as needed).

4.5.6 IPC – Imaging Procedure Control Segment

The IPC segment contains information about tasks that need to be performed in order to fulfill the request for imaging service. The information includes location, type and instance identification of equipment (acquisition modality) and stages (procedure steps).

Note: References, field names and definitions in this section were developed in collaboration with DICOM with the goal of keeping HL7 transmission of imaging procedure control information consistent with the DICOM Standard available from NEMA (www.nema.org).

HL7 Attribute Table – IPC – Imaging Procedure Control Segment

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	80	EI	R			01330	Accession Identifier
2	22	EI	R			01658	Requested Procedure ID
3	70	EI	R			01659	Study Instance UID
4	22	EI	R			01660	Scheduled Procedure Step ID

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
5	16	CE	O			01661	Modality
6	250	CE	O	Y		01662	Protocol Code
7	22	EI	O			01663	Scheduled Station Name
8	250	CE	O	Y		01664	Scheduled Procedure Step Location
9	16	ST	O			01665	Scheduled AE Title

4.5.6.0 IPC field definitions

4.5.6.1 IPC-1 Accession Identifier (EI) 01330

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: A workflow-management IDIS generated number that identifies the Filler Order for an Imaging Service (Imaging Service Request). This identifier corresponds one-to-one to the Order Filler number but is used in internal tracking of the work by the IDIS and in communication between IDIS within the department. It also has specific requirements to assure its compatibility with DICOM. It is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (Section 2.A.28). Its first component is a string that identifies the Imaging Service Request. A limit of sixteen (16) characters is required to allow compatibility with DICOM. See DICOM Standard Part 3 for further details on DICOM Attribute (0008,0050) that conveys information identical to the component one of this field.

An IDIS that performs functions of the workflow management for a department may accept a single Placer Order that gives rise to one or more Filler Orders-Imaging Service Requests. For example, an IDIS may receive an order for an X-ray examination of the patient daily at 8 am for the next three days. For the purposes of fulfilling the Placer Order, it will identify each of the daily exams either as a separate Filler Order or parts of a single Filler Order. Correspondingly, it will assign one or more Filler Order numbers associated with the order. For each of the Filler Order numbers, it will assign a unique Accession Number.

Each of the Imaging Service Requests may contain one or more Requested Procedures that it will identify with the Requested Procedure ID. The Requested Procedure is the most granular unit of work that may lead to the creation of the procedure report. Each procedure report contributes to the results for the order. In the example mentioned above, each of the daily examinations will require a separate diagnostic report, hence each of them will be treated as a separate Requested Procedure. Depending on the treatment of the order by the IDIS, it will either link all Requested Procedures to a single Filler Order-Imaging Service Request, or link each Requested Procedure to its own Imaging Service Request. Exact type of requested procedure is conveyed by the coded values in OBR-44 Procedure Code and OBR-45 Procedure Code modifier for each procedure. Note that in case of multiple Requested Procedures corresponding to one order, each procedure may have different code.

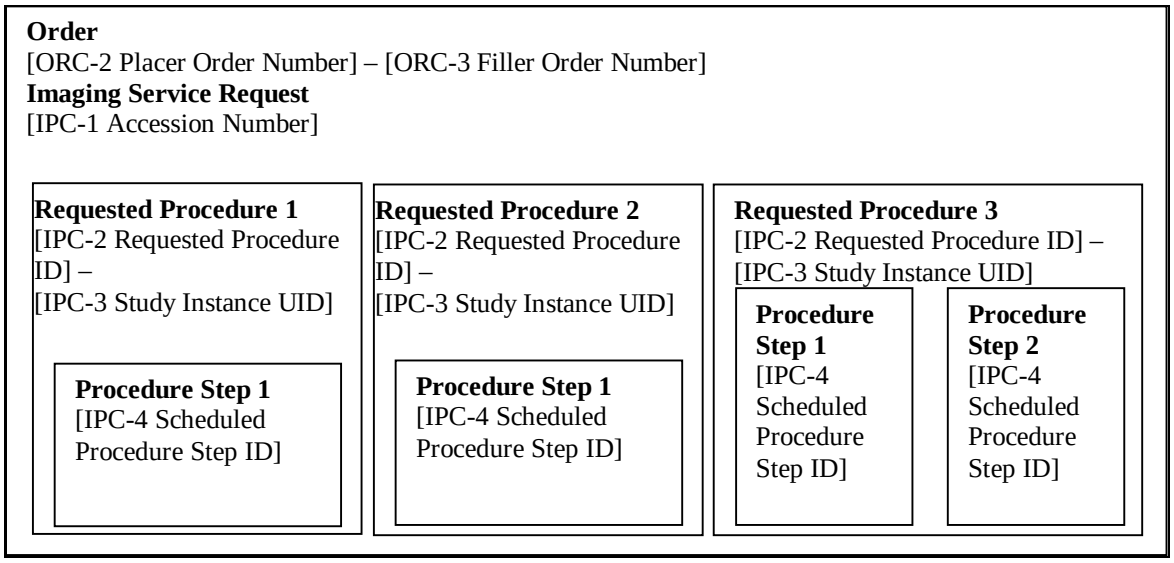
To support communication with the instances of equipment in a department (acquisition modalities), IDIS will also generate the Study Instance UID, a globally unique identifier for each Requested Procedure. This identifier will be used by acquisition modalities to identify all generated images and other DICOM objects related to this Requested Procedure. Note that, unlike the Study Instance UID, the Requested Procedure ID must only be unique within the scope of the encompassing Imaging Service Request identified by an Accession Number.

Each of the Requested Procedures may be further broken down by the IDIS into the Scheduled Procedure Steps based on the timing and equipment requirements. Each step is identified with the Scheduled Procedure Step ID. A single Procedure Step may only be performed on a single type and instance of the equipment. Thus, while the Requested Procedure may identify multi-modality examination (such as ones

common in Nuclear Medicine), a single Procedure Step shall correspond to the operations performed on a single modality.

The example of the hierarchy of Imaging Service Request, Requested Procedure and Scheduled Procedure Step is depicted in a figure 4-6. Identifiers of the entities are represented by the field names stated in square brackets.

Figure 4-6. Hierarchy of Imaging Service Request, Requested Procedure and Scheduled Procedure Step



The full hierarchy constitutes the context that will be shared between all IDIS within a department in a course of order fulfillment.

Each OMI message shall convey information about Requested Procedure(s) pertaining to one order. A pair of Segments ORC/OBR shall correspond to each requested procedure. If the Requested Procedure is comprised of multiple Procedure Steps, multiple IPC segments shall be included for each ORC/OBR pair in the message. Value of the IPC-1 field shall be identical in all IPC segments.

Considering the preceding example of X-ray examinations on subsequent days with two different steps identified for the last Requested Procedure and examinations to be performed at the site, "RADIOLOGY", the communication of the information using OMI message may look like the following:

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|...<cr>

OBR|1|X1234^HIS|R578^RIS|56782^X-Ray Chest|...|XPA^X-Ray Chest
   PA|...<cr>

IPC|A345^RIS|P1234^RIS|1.2.840.1234567890.3456786.1^RIS|SPS1^RIS|CR|SXPA
   ^Chest PA||RADIOLOGY|<cr>

ORC|NW|...<cr>

OBR|2|X1234^HIS|R578^RIS|56782^X-Ray Chest|...|XPA^X-Ray Chest
   PA|...<cr>

IPC|A345^RIS|P1235^RIS|1.2.840.1234567890.3456786.2^RIS|SPS1^RIS|CR|SXPA
   ^Chest PA||RADIOLOGY|<cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
ORC|NW|...<cr>
OBR|3|X1234^HIS|R578^RIS|56782^X-Ray Chest|...|XPALAT^X-Ray Chest PA and
   Lateral|...<cr>
IPC|A345^RIS|P1236^RIS|1.2.840.1234567890.3456786.3^RIS|SPS1^RIS|CR|SXPA
   ^Chest PA||RADIOLOGY|<cr>
IPC|A345^RIS|P1236^RIS|1.2.840.1234567890.3456786.3^RIS|SPS2^RIS|CR|SXLA
   T^Chest Lat||RADIOLOGY|<cr>
```

4.5.6.2 IPC-2 Requested Procedure ID (EI) 01658

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
          <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the identifier of the Requested Procedure that the workflow management IDIS selected to perform as a part of the order for the imaging service. It is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (Section 2.A.28). The first component of this field is a string that identifies the Requested Procedure. A limit of sixteen (16) characters is required to allow compatibility with DICOM. This string must uniquely identify the Requested Procedure within the scope of the order (as specified by accession number). This uniqueness must persist over time. See DICOM Standard Part 3 for further details on DICOM Attribute (0040,0001) that conveys information identical to the component one of this field.

The second through fourth components contain the ID of the workflow management IDIS, in the form of the HD data type (see Section 2.A.36, "HD - hierarchic designator"). The second component is a user-defined coded value that uniquely defines the application from other applications on the network. A limit of five (5) characters is suggested but not required. The second component of the Requested Procedure number always identifies the actual filler of an order.

A Requested Procedure is an instance of a Procedure of a given Procedure Type. An instance of a Requested Procedure includes all of the items of information that are specified by an instance of a Procedure Plan that is selected for the Requested Procedure by the imaging service provider. This Procedure Plan is defined by the imaging service provider on the basis of the Procedure Plan templates associated with the considered Procedure Type. An Imaging Service Request may include requests for several different Requested Procedures. The purpose of this entity is to establish the association between Imaging Service Requests and Procedure Types, to convey the information that belongs to this association and to establish the relationships between Requested Procedures and the other entities that are needed to describe them. A single Requested Procedure of one Procedure Type is the smallest unit of service that can be requested, reported, coded and billed. Performance of one instance of a Requested Procedure is specified by exactly one Procedure Plan. A Requested Procedure leads to one or more Scheduled Procedure Steps involving Protocols as specified by a Procedure Plan. A Requested Procedure may involve one or more pieces of equipment.

Each OMI message shall convey information about Requested Procedure(s) pertaining to one order. Pair of Segments ORC/OBR shall correspond to each requested procedure. If the Requested Procedure is comprised of multiple Procedure Steps, multiple IPC segments shall be included for each ORC/OBR pair in the message. In this case, the value of the IPC-2 field shall be identical in all IPC segments related to the same Requested Procedure.

4.5.6.3 IPC-3 Study Instance UID (EI) 01659

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
          <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: Globally unique identifier assigned by the workflow management IDIS to the Imaging Study under which all images and other DICOM objects produced in the course of the Requested Procedure shall be collected. It is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (Section 2.A.28). Its first component is a string

that identifies the Study. A limit of sixty-four (64) characters is required to allow compatibility with DICOM. See DICOM Standard Part 3 for further details on DICOM Attribute (0020,000D) that conveys information identical to component one of this field. The second through fourth components contain the ID of the workflow management IDIS, in the form of the HD data type (see Section 2.A.36, "HD - hierarchic designator"). The second component is a user-defined coded value that uniquely defines the application from other applications on the network. A limit of five (5) characters is suggested but not required. The second component of the Study Instance UID always identifies the actual filler of an order.

Each OMI message shall convey information about Requested Procedure(s) pertaining to one order. Pair of Segments ORC/OBR shall correspond to each requested procedure. If the Requested Procedure is comprised of multiple Procedure Steps, multiple IPC segments shall be included for each ORC/OBR pair in the message. In this case, the value of the IPC-3 field shall be identical in all IPC segments related to the same Requested Procedure.

4.5.6.4 IPC-4 Scheduled Procedure Step ID (EI) 01660

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the identifier of a particular Procedure Step (sub-procedure) of the Requested Procedure that the workflow management IDIS selected to perform as a part of the order for imaging service. It is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (Section 2.A.28). Its first component is a string that identifies the Procedure Step. A limit of sixteen (16) characters is required to allow compatibility with DICOM. This string must uniquely identify the Procedure Step within the scope of the Requested Procedure. This uniqueness must persist over time. See DICOM Standard Part 3 for further details on DICOM Attribute (0040,0009) that conveys information identical to the component one of this field.

The second through fourth components contain the ID of the workflow management IDIS, in the form of the HD data type (see Section 2.A.36, "HD - hierarchic designator"). The second component is a user-defined coded value that uniquely defines the application from other applications on the network. A limit of five (5) characters is suggested but not required. The second component of the Requested Procedure number always identifies the actual filler of an order.

A Procedure Step is an arbitrarily defined scheduled unit of service, which is specified by the Procedure Plan for a Requested Procedure. A Procedure Step prescribes Protocol that may be identified by one or more protocol codes. A Procedure Step involves equipment (e.g. imaging Modality equipment, anesthesia equipment, surgical equipment, transportation equipment), human resources, consumable supplies, location, and time (e.g. start time, stop time, duration). While in the context of Imaging Service request the scheduling of a Procedure Step might include only a general designation of imaging Modality that could be satisfied by multiple pieces of the same equipment type, the performance of one instance of a Procedure Step involves one and only one piece of imaging Modality equipment.

4.5.6.5 IPC-5 Modality (CE) 01661

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: The type of equipment requested to acquire data during performance of a Procedure Step. The acquired data will be used to create the images for the Imaging Study corresponding to the Requested Procedure.

This field is a case of the CE data type. Refer to DICOM Standard Part 3 for valid values and further details on DICOM Attribute (0008,0060) that conveys information identical to component one of this field.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

A limit of sixteen (16) characters for the first component is required to allow compatibility with DICOM. The third component of this field, if present, shall have the value of "DCM" (see HL7 table 0396).

4.5.6.6 IPC-6 Protocol Code (CE) 01662

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: One or more coded entries identifying the protocol according to which the Scheduled Procedure Step shall be performed. Protocol Code(s) may identify particular equipment settings as well as operator's manipulations.

A Protocol is a specification of actions prescribed by a Procedure Plan to perform a specific Procedure Step. A Scheduled Procedure Step contains only one Protocol that may be conveyed by one or more Protocol Codes. Typically, the code or codes identifying Protocol instance would be selected from a catalog of protocols established locally or provided by equipment manufacturers or professional organizations. Multiple Protocols may not exist in one Scheduled Procedure Step. See DICOM Standard Part 3 for further details on DICOM Attribute (0040,0008) that conveys information identical to components one through three of this field.

A limit of sixteen (16) characters for the first component and sixty-four (64) characters for the second component is required to allow compatibility with DICOM.

4.5.6.7 IPC-7 Scheduled Station Name (EI) 01663

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the instance of the modality resource being requested for the performance of a particular Scheduled Procedure Step. It is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (Section 2.A.28). The first component of this field is a string that identifies the particular piece of equipment. A limit of sixteen (16) characters is required to allow compatibility with DICOM. See DICOM Standard Part 3 for further details on DICOM Attribute (0040,0010) that conveys information identical to the component one of this field.

The second through fourth components identify the organization, in the form of the HD data type (see Section 2.A.36, "HD - hierarchic designator").

If the Scheduled Procedure Step is to be performed by an unspecified member of a pool of resources, this field shall be empty and IPC-8 Scheduled Procedure Step Location is used to identify the site-specific resource pool. See section 4.4.8.8 for explanation of the resource pool.

4.5.6.8 IPC-8 Scheduled Procedure Step Location (CE) 01664

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies a locally defined physical location of the modality resource being requested for performance of particular Scheduled Procedure Step. Although location is usually defined geographically (such as identification of a campus, building, floor, etc.) it may be used for identification of a pool of equipment (resources) formed by any other means. Values for the field shall be drawn from a locally defined coding scheme.

For example, the pool may be defined as a set of three CT scanners belonging to an imaging center within a hospital. Two of these scanners may also be grouped into another pool based on their location at a building A, whereas the third scanner may be in a pool by itself due to its location in a building B.

If this field contains more than one location code, the equipment may be drawn from several resource pools.

If this field is empty and the fields IPC-7 and IPC-9 are also empty, it is assumed that a particular Procedure Step may be performed by any instance of equipment of a particular type within an organization.

See DICOM Standard Part 3 for further details on DICOM Attribute (0040,0011) that conveys information identical to component one of this field. A limit of sixteen (16) characters for the first component is required to allow compatibility with DICOM.

4.5.6.9 IPC-9 Scheduled Station AE Title (ST) 01665

Definition: This field contains the Application Entity Title of the modality resource being requested for performance of a particular Scheduled Procedure Step. Application Entity Title is the identifier that identifies an instance of DICOM-compatible equipment for the purpose of addressing during communication. See DICOM Standard, Part 3 for further details on the DICOM Attribute (0040,0001) that conveys equivalent information. A limit of sixteen (16) characters is required to allow compatibility with DICOM.

If the Scheduled Procedure Step is to be performed by an unspecified member of a pool of resources, this field shall be empty and IPC-8 Scheduled Procedure Step Location is used to identify the site-specific resource pool. See section 4.4.8.8 for explanation of the resource pool.

4.6 GENERAL MESSAGE EXAMPLES

The purpose of this section is to show how certain specific situations would be handled using the order entry protocol. The ellipses represent uncompleted details. The symbol // precedes comments for clarification.

4.6.1 An order replaced by three orders

Suppose that an application called "PC" is sending an order to the EKG application for three EKGs to be done on successive days.

The order might be placed as follows:

ORM message:

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|A226677^PC||946281^PC||N|3^QAM||198801121132|P123^AQITANE^ELLINOR
   E^""^""^""^MD|||4EAST|...<cr>

 // EKG order

OBR|1|||8601-7^EKG
   IMPRESSION^LN||||||||||||P030^SMITH^MARTIN^""^""^""^MD||||||||||3^QA
   M|...<cr>

BLG|...<cr>

ORC|NW|...<cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
// Another order yet others may follow
```

There is a group number first component indicating that an order group is being created.

Responses: Because the EKG application must turn the single order above into three orders for three separate EKGs (services), the results of each will be reported under its own OBR segment. Several response levels are possible depending on the Response Flag:

a) If the Response Flag is N (as it is), then the filler EKG application only responds "I got the order."

```
MSH|...<cr>
MSA|...<cr>
```

The only implication of this response is that the order was received.

If the Response Flag had been E, then the response would have been the same, but its implication would have been that the EKG application had processed all the orders and they were acceptable.

b) If the Response Flag were R, then the filler EKG application must communicate to the PC the fact of the creation of child orders, but with no details:

```
MSH|...<cr>
MSA|...<cr>
ORC|PA|A226677^PC|89-458^EKG|946281^PC<cr>
ORC|CH|A226677^PC|89-551^EKG|946281...<cr>    // 1ST child ORC.
ORC|CH|A226677^PC|89-552^EKG|946281...<cr>    // 2ND child ORC.
ORC|CH|A226677^PC|89-553^EKG|946281...<cr>    // 3RD child ORC.
...                                           // Other parts of follow.
```

What has been said here is "Your A226767 has spun out three children named 89-551, 89-552, and 89-553." Notice that the placer order numbers are identical in the children's ORCs.

c) If the Response Flag were D, then the filler EKG application must communicate to the PC application the fact of the replacement and also the exact replacement order segments:

```
MSH|...<cr>
MSA|...<cr>
ORC|PA|A226677^PC|89-458^EKG<cr>
ORC|CH|A226677^PC|89-551^EKG|946281^PC|SC|||A226677&PC^89-458&EKG|
   ... ^^^^198901130500^...<cr>
// 1ST child ORC
OBR|1||89-551^EKG|8601-7^EKG IMPRESSION^LN|...<cr>
// 1ST child OBR
ORC|CH|A226677^PC|89-522^EKG|946281^PC|SC|||A226677&PC^89-458&EKG|
   ...  ^^^^198901140500^...<cr>
// 2ND child ORC
OBR|2||89-552^EKG|8601-7^EKG IMPRESSION^LN|...<cr>
// 2ND child OBR
ORC|CH|A226677^PC|89-553^EKG|946281^PC|SC|||A226677&PC^89-458&EKG|
   ...^^^^198901150500^...<cr>
```

```
// 3RD child ORC
OBR|3||89-553^EKG|8601-7^EKG IMPRESSION^LN|... <cr>
// 3RD child OBR
// Other parts might follow
```

Here the actual OBR segments have been added.

The status of the child orders is being reported as SC (scheduled).

ORC-7-quantity/timing shows that the EKGs are requested after 0500 on successive days.

4.6.2 Ordering non-medical services

The ORM message can be used for various types of orders. The following examples show how the ORM/ORR messages can be used to order non-medical services. The patient requests hospital specific services for a certain period of time. This can be a phone, fax, or TV in the room, or the delivery of a newspaper every day. Another example may be the use of specialized chip cards that give access to hospital specific services. Typically, a request for these services is made at the time of admission. Another example may be the printing of a form (e.g. the receipt for a payment). In case of using phones it might be a detailed list of calls for a patient or for a special extension.

To support these scenarios, the following fields are used to communicate the appropriate message:

Segment/Field	Definition
ORC-1	Order Control
ORC-2	Placer Order Number
ORC-5	Order Status
ORC-7.4	Start Date/Time
ORC-7.5	End Date/Time
ORC-16	Order Control Code Reason
ORC-25	Order Status Modifier
OBR-4	Universal Service ID
OBX-5	Observation Value
FT1-17	Fee Schedule
FT1-11	Transaction amount – extended
BLG	Billing segment

- ORC-1, ORC-2, OBR-4, OBX-5
  These services can be started, discontinued, canceled, locked etc. according to the *ORC-1- Order control code*. The order is identified through *ORC-2- Placer order number*. The service itself is specified in the field *OBR-4- Universal service ID*. User defined codes are used to identify the specific services. The identification of the object of the service, e.g., phone number or card number, is done using the *OBX-5- Observation value*. The ORC-25-Order Status Modifier is used to refine the status of the universal service ID. For example, in the case of issuing chip cards, these fields would be valued as follows:

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORC-1	OBR-4 (in textual form)	ORC-16.1 Code	Description
NW	chip card		Issue a chip card the first time
XO	chip card	defective	Change the previous order. Issue a new chip card for a defective one.
XO	chip card	lost	Change the previous order. Issue a new chip card for a defective one.
DC	Return chip card		Cancel the chip card order
DC	Return chip card	lost	Cancel the chip card order because lost.
DC	Return chip card	defective	Cancel the chip card order because defective.

Use of different universal service IDs allows for the ability to charge an additional fee.

- ORC-7
  The field ORC-7-: Quantity/timing describe time periods during which the requested service is valid. The components 4 and 5 denote the start and end date/time.

- ORC-5
  In this field information on the status of the service can be transmitted. This field can be used in particular in response to a query message.

- ORC-25
  This field allows for refining the status of the requested universal service, e.g. to change an order for a chip card in order to distribute a new card for a lost one.

- BLG-1,2,3
  These fields indicate to the financial system that charges are to be invoiced for this service.

- FT1-17
  In some cases it is necessary that the placer defines a special tariff the filler has to use for computing the final balance.

- FT1-11
  In combination with the tariff the patient can prepay the ordered service. This may be helpful when the patient uses services provided by the hospital in order to use the service from the beginning. FT1-6 must be valued at "PY".
  If no amount is prepaid a limit can be established according to a special tariff. This depends on the setup of the filling system. In such a case the hospital grants a credit to the patient.

Phone Number Assignment

In case the patient requests a bedside phone and the number of this phone is assigned to him personally, a number of messages are transmitted. The objective is to connect a phone number to a patient and a room.

The update of the location master file depends on the setup of the private branch exchange system (PABX):

a) **Variable Numbering System**
   On admission the patient is assigned his personal call number, which he retains throughout his stay, including if he is transferred. The patient can always be reached under the same call number.
   To understand the mechanism for M05 events it is important to know that two different sets of phone numbers exist: One is a pool to be used when querying for a phone number for a patient, the other one is used for temporary assignments when no patient is lying in the bed (i.e. the bed is free).

b) **Fixed Numbering System**
On admission the system issues the patient with a telephone and/or TV authorization. This authorization key must be entered into the phone to activate it.
No M05 messages are necessary if a fixed numbering system is used: Each telephone connection is assigned a permanent call number when the system is set up.

When the patient is admitted, a ADT^A01 message is sent to create a patient record in the phone number assigning application. Typically, the patient ID (PID-3), patient location (PV1-3), and visit number (PV1-19) are at least required. This message is acknowledged accordingly with an ACK. Then, the order for the phone number to the phone number assigning application is placed with the ORM^O01 message where the essential fields are ORC-1 = "NW", ORC-2 = <placer order number>, and OBR-4 = "Phone".

The ORR^O02 message is used to acknowledge the order and communicate the filler order number and order status. Then, when the phone number is available, a ORU^R01 message is used to communicate the phone number using OBX-5 for the phone number.

Any status changes to the order are communicated with the ORM^O01 message where ORC-1 = "SC", ORC-2 = <placer order number>, ORC-3 = <filler order number>, ORC-5 = <order status>, OBR-4 = "Phone", and OBX-5 = <Phone Number of Patient>. The status change is acknowledged with the ORR^O02 message.

Next, the location master files are updated. The phone number assigning application may send a MFN^M05 message to have the location master file reflect the phone number assignment as well. The fields on the message are valued as follows:

After processing the order: MFI-1 = "LOC", MFI-3 = "UPD", MFI-5 = <effective date/time>, MFE-1 = "MUP", LOC-1 = <patient location>, LOC-3 = "B" (bed), LOC-6 = <Phone Number of Patient>. This message is acknowledged using the MFK^M05 message.

Transfer a patient (A02)

If a patient keeps the same phone number during the whole visit the assigned phone number must be mapped to a different phone outlet whenever a patient is transferred to a new location. In that case, the ADT^A02 message is sent to the phone number assigning application. That application not only acknowledges the message, but also sends an ORM^O01 message with ORC-1 = "SC and the other fields the same as described in the Phone Number Assignment section. Additionally, it sends a MFN^M05 message to change the location master file accordingly for the old location and another MFN^M05 to synchronize the phones for the new location.

Leave of absence (A21/A22)

When the patient leaves the hospital or the bed is vacated for a significant amount of time, the phone needs to be de-activated and re-activated appropriately. The same ORM^O01 and MFN^M05 messages are used as described above following the ADT^A21 and ADT^22 messages.

Patient makes calls or (de-)activates his phone

The patient can use the phone whenever he wants to. This implies that his balance does not exceed the limit. Otherwise the phone is deactivated automatically. Furthermore the patient can activate or deactivate the phone by entering the authorization key for his own. In these scenarios the phone number assigning application sends and ORM^O01 message with ORC-1 = "OD" and the appropriate order status. The status update is necessary to provide a call switching system with the actual information.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Discharge a patient (A03)

When the patient is discharged, the ADT^A03 message is sent to indicate a discharge. The phone number assigning application sends an ORM^O01 message with a change of status to indicate completion of the order, as well as an MFN^M05 message to synchronize the location master file.

After discharging a patient his final charges must be billed. Using the query P04 returns the data in a display oriented format which can be used for printing. Alternatively a print request can be used. The billing system issues a QRY^P04 message where the fields are valued as follows: QRD-2 = "R" (record oriented format), QRD-3 = "I" (immediate response), QRD-8.1 = <Patient ID>, QRF-2 = <start date/time>, and QRF-3 = <end date/time>. The phone number assigning applications responds with a DSR^P04 message with the data in DSP-3.

Phone Call Queries (Q??)

The new query modes using a query by parameter query with a virtual table response allows for obtaining call information from the phone system to be used for charging. The query can be for accumulated data or detailed data. Both requests use this conformance statement:

Query ID:	Z73
Query Name:	Information about Phone Calls
Query Type:	Query
Query Trigger:	QBP^Z73^QBP_Z73
Query Mode:	Both
Response Trigger:	RTB^Z74^RTB_Z74
Query Priority:	Immediate
Query Characteristics:	Returns response sorted by *Phone Number*
Purpose:	Retrieve all information about phone calls made during a defined interval either in a detailed or an accumulative format. The identifier for the patient must be given.

QBP^Z73^QBP_Z73	QBP Message	Status	Section Reference
MSH	Message Header Segment		2.15.9
[{ SFT }]	Software		2.15.12
QPD	Query Parameter Definition		5.5.4
RCP	Response Control Parameter		5.5.6

QPD Input Parameter Specification:

Field Seq. (Query ID=Z73)	Name	Key/ Search	Sort	LEN	TYPE	Opt	Rep	Match Op	TBL	Segment Field Name	Service Identifier Code	ElementName
1	Patient ID	K	Y	80	CX	R		=		PID.3		PID.3 Patient ID
2	Date Range			53	DR	O		contains=				

Field Seq. (Query ID=Z73)	Name	Key/ Search	Sort	LEN	TYPE	Opt	Rep	Match Op	TBL	Segment Field Name	Service Identifier Code	ElementName
3	Detailed			2	ID	O		=	0136 Yes/No			

Input Parameter Field Description and Commentary:

Field	Component	DT	Description
Patient ID		CX	Components: <ID (ST)> ^ <check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)>
			This field contains a patient identification code to identify the requested person.
			If this field is not valued, no values for this field are considered to be a match.
Date Range		DR	This field specifies the range of time, the requested records should match.
			If this field is not valued, all values for this field are considered to be a match.
Detailed		ID	This field specifies whether the output should be detailed. (no cumulative records).
			If this field is not valued, a detailed result is returned.
			When Detailed=Y is requested, one record for each call is returned. Each detailed record will contain columns 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, and 9 (Providor, Region, Extension, Destination, Date/Time, Duration, Units, Amount) for each call.
			When detailed=N, the query is for accumulated data. In this case, one row record per extension is returned.
			Each row will return columns 1, 2, 6, 7, 8, and 9 (Provider, Region, Quantity, Units, Amount) from the output virtual table.

Response Grammar:

RTB^Z74^RTB_Z74	Personnel Information Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2.15.9
MSA	Message Acknowledgement		2.15.8
[{ ERR }]	Error		2.15.5
[{ SFT }]	Software		2.15.12
QAK	Query Acknowledgement		5.5.2
QPD	Query Parameter Definition		5.5.4
[	--- ROW_DEFINITION begin		
RDF	Table Row Definition Segment		5.5.7
[{ RDT }]	Table Row Data Segment		5.5.8
]	--- ROW_DEFINITION end		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2.15.4

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Virtual Table:

ColName (Z74)	Key/ Search	Sort	LEN	TYPE	Opt	Rep	Match Op	TBL	Segment Field Name	LOINC or HL7 code	Element Name
Provider			40	ST	R						
Region			40	ST	R						
Extension			250	XTN	O						
Destination number			250	XTN	O						
Date/Time		Y	26	TS	O						
Quantity			4	NM	O						
Duration			4	NM	O						
Units			4	NM	O						
Amount			8	MO	O						

4.6.2.1 Examples

Example 1:

Query the accumulated list for patient 12345 from 3/2/00 till 3/3/00. Transfer the first 20 records.

Query:

```
MSH|^&~\|PCR|Gen Hosp|PIMS||20000303201400-
   0800||QBP^Z73^QBP_Z73|9901|P|2.4|||||||

QPD|Z89^Query Phone
   Calls^HL7nnn|Q010|12345|2000030100000^20000302235959|Y

RCP|I|20^RD|
```

Answer:

```
MSH|^&~\|PIMS|Gen
   Hosp|PCR||1998112014010800||RTB^Z74^RTB_Z74|8858|P|2.4|||||||

MSA|AA|9901|

QAK|Q010|OK|Z89^Query Phone Calls^HL7nnn|4

QPD|Z89^Query Phone
   Calls^HL7nnn|Q010|12345|2000030100000^20000302235959|Y|

RDF|9|Provider^ST^20|Region^ST^40|Extension^XTN^40|Destination^XTN^40|Da
   te/Time^TS^26|Quantity^NM^4|Duration^NM^4|Units^NM^4|Amount^MO^8|

RDT|DTAG|CITY||||5|20|3|3.25|

RDT|DTAG|R50||||1|10|2|1.00|

RDT|DTAG|R200||||0|0|0|0|

RDT|DTAG|NAT||||0|0|0|0|

RDT|DTAG|INT||||0|0|0|0|
```

Example 2:

Query the detailed information for patient 12345 from 3/1/00 till 3/3/00. Transfer the first 10 records.

Query:

```
MSH|^&~\|PCR|Gen Hosp|PIMS||199811201400-
   0800||QBP^Z89^QBP_Z89|ACK9901|P|2.4|||||||
```

```
QPD|Z89^Query Phone
   Calls^HL7nnn|Q010|12345|2000030100000^20000302235959|Y||||

RCP|I|10^RD|
```

Answer:

```
MSH|^&~\|PIMS|Gen Hosp|PCR||199811201401-
   0800||RTB^X89^RTB_X89|8858|P|2.4||||||||

MSA|AA|8858 QAK|Q010|OK|Z89^Query Phone Calls^HL7nnn|4

QPD|Z89^Query Phone
   Calls^HL7nnn|Q010|12345|2000030100000^20000302235959|Y||||

RDF|9|Provider^ST^20|Region^ST^40|Extension^XTN^40|Destination^XTN^40|Da
   te/Time^TS^26|Quantity^NM^4|Duration^NM^4|Units^NM^4|Amount^MO^8|

RDT|DTAG|CITY|12345|555-1234|200003021715||20|12|2.25|

RDT|DTAG|CITY|12345|555-4569|200003011252||21|3|0.48|
```

Requesting a Chip card

In case the hospital provides additional services that can be accessed through chip cards, this card has to be issued to the patient. At the end of the visit this chip card is returned. Distributing a chip card to a patient is a service which must be ordered from the chip card dispensing system, too. When discharging the patient the service (= order) is complete.

The messages are essentially the same as for issuing a phone number. The filler for the chip card order is a chip card dispensing application and instead of returning a phone number, it returns a chip card number. The following scenarios have slight variations.

New Chip Card requested due to, e.g., loss

When a card is lost, or a new chip card must be requested, an additional fee can be communicated by including the FT1 segment in the ORM^O01 message and valuing FT1-11 = <additional fee>.

Request a new Chip card for a defective one

Sometimes a chip card is defective. Then the patient needs a new one. This situation requires an order using the XO control code in the ORM^O01 message. The chip card dispensing system returns the new chip card number using the ORU^RO1. The ORC-16-Order Control Code Reason is used to clarify the request

Return a chip card

When the patient returns the chip card, a discontinue message is send with ORC-1 = "DC". This message is acknowledged accordingly by the chip card dispensing system.

Printing a form

When form needs printing, the ORM^O01 could also be used. The OBR segment would contain the print form service and the OBX would contain the specific print form. A notification when completing the printing is feasible as well using the ORM^O01 with a status update associated to the appropriate placer/filler order number.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.7 DIET TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS

A diet office needs to receive specific information, the most important being the diet order itself. Diet restrictions (often called diet codes) are the basic building blocks of a diet order. The diet order segments may be sent as part of the ORM and ORR message structure to support backwards compatibility, or may be sent as part of the following dedicated message structures.

4.7.1 OMD - Dietary Order (Event O03)

OMD^O03^OMD_O03	Dietary Order	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER_DIET begin		
ORC	Common Order Segment		4
[{	--- TIMING_DIET begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING_DIET end		
[	--- DIET begin		
{ ODS }	Dietary Orders, Suppl., Prefer.		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for ODS)		2
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		

OMD^O03^OMD_O03	Dietary Order	Status	Chapter
OBX	Results		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
]	--- DIET end		
}	--- ORDER_DIET end		
[{	--- ORDER_TRAY begin		
ORC	Common Order Segment		4
[{	--- TIMING_TRAY begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING_TRAY end		
{ ODT }	Diet Tray Instructions		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for ODT)		2
}]	--- ORDER_TRAY end		

4.7.2 ORD - dietary order acknowledgment (Event O04)

ORD^O04^ORD_O04	Dietary Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for MSA)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER_DIET begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING_DIET begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING_DIET end		
[{ ODS }]	Dietary Orders, Supplements, and Preferences		4

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORD^O04^ORD_O04	Dietary Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for ODS)		2
}	--- ORDER_DIET end		
[{	--- ORDER_TRAY begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING_TRAY begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING_TRAY end		
[{ ODT }]	Diet Tray Instructions		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for ODT)		2
}]	--- ORDER_TRAY end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

The ODS segment is intended to cover the basic diet definition of one diet code. A diet can be ordered as a combination of one or more diet specifications, followed by any number of supplements and/or preferences. Many diets are common to all institutions, such as an ADA 1500 calorie diet, and may exist in a table. Each diet code is limited to a six-character abbreviation.

A dietary message never specifies more than one diet. However, a single diet order may be used to discontinue one diet and specify its replacement. In this instance, the dietary message will contain two ORCs. The first ORC will not contain an ODT. A tray specification order may follow the second ORC.

Often a complete diet order consists of a single diet code. The diet code defines which foods a patient may receive. In cases where a patient cannot make food selections, a diet code often causes service of a predefined set of foods. A patient must have at least one diet code to receive food.

Supplements provide a mechanism for giving any additional desired foods to a patient. Supplements are foods given to a patient regardless of their diet codes. These foods are part of the patient's diet without being restricted by any other part of the order. Therefore, supplement assignment needs to be a controlled and supervised process to ensure that a patient does not receive improper or potentially harmful foods.

Preferences consist of likes, dislikes, substitutions, and complementary foods. Preferences are diet orders, effectively from the patient, but transmitted from the ward. They are subject to change. A mechanism is included for defining patient preferences with this proposal. Preferences are independent of the diet order and do not change when the order changes. However, if a preference violates the conditions of the diet order, then that preference is not allowed.

There is additional information that the dietary service requires for proper operation, including tray delivery times, extra trays, and messages regarding tray delivery and handling.

A patient can have only one effective diet order at a time. A diet order consists of the diet codes, supplements, and preferences effective at a given time. These three specifications govern which foods a patient will receive. Diets generally do not have a stated ending time to ensure that the patient always receives food (unless an NPO order is received).

Diet codes govern foods in two ways. First, there are foods which are simply not allowed on a specified diet. Second, some diets imply a nutrient exchange pattern which controls the amounts of certain foods that a patient can receive. Some diet codes can combine to make a single diet order. An ADA 1500 and a 2 gram sodium (NA2GM) diet can coexist since they do not address the same exchanges. The patterns for these diets can combine without conflicting or overlapping. Certain kinds of diet codes cannot be combined, such as ADA 1500 and ADA 2000. It

is impossible to feed a patient at two different calorie levels. These constraints are not defined in the table, but rather are implied by the semantics of the codes.

An order specifies the complete foods a patient can or should receive at a given meal. (Depending on the institution and diet order, a patient may or may not have a choice of foods. For example, a clear liquid diet often gives no choices since there are few clear liquid foods.) A modification to a diet, by adding a diet code or supplement, may have a drastic effect on foods the patient may eat. Due to this, any modification to the diet codes or supplements will be a new order. Therefore, one must send any information for diet codes or supplements from the previous order which is still applicable for the next order. For example, a patient has an ADA 1500 calorie diet and an evening snack of Skim Milk. If you wanted to add a 2 gram sodium restriction, you need to send both the ADA 1500 calorie and the 2 gram sodium diet codes along with the Skim Milk supplement. If you do not do this, the dietary application must presume the new order is merely for 2 grams of sodium. This method allows for a comprehensive audit trail of orders and prevents ambiguities in interpretation.

4.8 DIET SEGMENTS

4.8.1 ODS - dietary orders, supplements, and preferences segment

The ORC sequence items of interest to ODS are ORC-1-order control, ORC-2-placer order number, ORC-3-filler order number, ORC-7-quantity/timing, ORC-9-date/time of transaction, ORC-10-entered by, and ORC-11-verified by. For ORC-1-order control, the values may be New (NW), Cancel (CA), Discontinue Order Request (DC), Change (XO), Hold Order Request (HD), and Release Previous Hold (RL). The HD and RL codes could stop service for a specified length of time. ORC-7-quantity/timing should be used to specify whether an order is continuous or for one service period only. It is also useful for supplements which are part of a diet but only delivered, say, every day at night.

Example:

```
|1^QPM^^19910415|.
```

HL7 Attribute Table – ODS – Dietary Orders, Supplements, and Preferences

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	1	ID	R		0159	00269	Type
2	250	CE	O	Y/10		00270	Service Period
3	250	CE	R	Y/20		00271	Diet, Supplement, or Preference Code
4	80	ST	O	Y/2		00272	Text Instruction

4.8.1.0 ODS field definitions

4.8.1.1 ODS-1 Type (ID) 00269

Definition: This field specifies type of diet. Refer To *HL7 Table 0159 - Diet Code Specification Type* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0159 - Diet Code Specification Type

Value	Description	Comment
D	Diet	
S	Supplement	
P	Preference	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.8.1.2 ODS-2 Service Period (CE) 00270

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: When blank, the modifier applies to all service periods. Diet orders, for example, typically apply to all service periods. This field usually specifies supplements. This field allows you to designate a modification for one or more of the service periods during a day by combining service specifications as needed. The service periods will be local CEs, normally numbers. Suggested are:

service 1	is	breakfast
service 2	is	mid-morning snack
service 3	is	lunch
service 4	is	mid-afternoon snack
service 5	is	dinner
service 6	is	bedtime snack

Ex: |1~5| means service 1 and service 5, whatever these are locally defined to be.

4.8.1.3 ODS-3 Diet, Supplement, or Preference Code (CE) 00271

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the identifier of the ordered item for a patient; it is equivalent to *OBR-4-universal service ID* in function. Since ODS is a repeating segment, multiple entities get multiple segments. Example:

```
|^REG|, |023^^99FD6|, |^NOLACT|, |^TUBEFD|, and
   |011^HIPRO100^99FD1~123^LOFAT20^99FD1|
```

In the case where this segment requests a diet supplement, i.e., *ODS-1-type* = S, this attribute specifies a particular item or class of items. If institutional codes for patient food preferences (P) have been codified, they are also expressed as coded segments; otherwise, the information is passed as a text string in the fourth component of the ODS segment, described below.

4.8.1.4 ODS-4 Text instruction (ST) 00272

Definition: This field defines the specific instructions for dietary. These instructions may address specific patient needs, such as isolation. This field provides the ordering provider's dietary instructions as free text. It can represent the full dietary instruction or indicate supplemental information.

4.8.2 ODT - diet tray instructions segment

This segment addresses tray instructions. These are independent of diet codes, supplements, and preferences and therefore get separate order numbers.

HL7 Attribute Table – ODT – Diet Tray Instructions

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	CE	R		0160	00273	Tray Type
2	250	CE	O	Y/10		00270	Service Period

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
3	80	ST	O			00272	Text Instruction

4.8.2.0 ODT field definitions

4.8.2.1 ODT-1 Tray Type (CE) 00273

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field defines the type of dietary tray. Refer To *HL7 Table 0160 - Tray Type* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0160 - Tray Type

Value	Description	Comment
EARLY	Early tray	
LATE	Late tray	
GUEST	Guest tray	
NO	No tray	
MSG	Tray message only	

Tray specifications are useful for early and late tray delivery in cases where a patient undergoes a procedure during normal feeding times. Tray specifications can also be used for guest trays, no trays, and messages. The value MSG means the ODT segment does not specify the type of tray but provides additional information about an existing tray. This information is found in *ODT-3-text instruction*.

4.8.2.2 ODT-2 Service period (CE) 00270

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: When blank, the modifier applies to all service periods. This field allows you to designate one or more of the feeding periods during a day by combining the codes as needed. It can also combine with quantity/timing to give such information as which service period the order belongs with. This field is identical in meaning with *ODS-2-service period*. See Section *4.8.1.2*, "*ODS-2 Service Period (CE) 00270*," for further details.

4.8.2.3 ODT-3 Text Instruction (ST) 00272

Definition: This field defines instructions associated with the tray. Example:

```
|PLASTIC SILVERWARE|.
```

4.9 DIET MESSAGE EXAMPLES

4.9.1 Typical progression of orders for a surgery patient

First order:

```
MSH|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
ORC|NW|1235^NURS|||||^^^199108021700||199108021200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^F.^Mary|...<cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
ODS|D||321^DB15^99DO3|...<cr>

ODS|D||322^NA2GM^99DO3|<cr>
```

Hold first order:

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|HD|1235^NURS|||||^^^199108031700||199108031200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^F.^Mary |...<cr>
```

NPO order with guest tray:

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1236^NURS|||||^^^199108031700||199108031200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODS|D||323^NPO^99DO3|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1244^NURS|||||^^^199108031700||199108031200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODT|GUEST^Guest tray^HL70160|5^^99CBD|...<cr>
```

Clear liquid with guest tray:

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|DC|1236^NURS|||||^^^199108041700||199108041200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1237^NURS|||||^^^199108041700||199108041200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODS|D||321^DB15^99DO3|...<cr>

ODS|D||322^NA2GM^99DO3|...<cr>

ODS|D||324^CLRLIQ^99DO3|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1245^NURS|||||^^^199108041700||199108041200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODT|GUEST^Guest tray^HL70160|5^^99CBD|...<cr>
```

Full liquid with guest tray:

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|DC|1237^NURS|||||^^^199108051700||199108051200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1238^NURS|||||^^^199108051700||199108051200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODS|D||321^DB15^99DO3|...<cr>

ODS|D||322^NA2GM^99DO3|...<cr>

ODS|D||325^FULLIQ^99DO3|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1246^NURS|||||^^^199108051700||199108051200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>
```

```
ODT|GUEST^Guest tray^HL70160|3^^99CBD|...<cr>
```

Release hold on previous order and give discharge message:

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|DC|1238^NURS|||||^^^199108061700||199108061200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ORC|RL|1235^NURS|||||^^^199108061700||199108061200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary |...<cr>

ORC|NW|1247^NURS|||||^^^199108061700||199108061200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODT|MSG^Tray message only^HL70160|5^^99CBD|You Will Be Leaving
   Tomorrow|...<cr>
```

4.9.2 Complex order

Basic diet: high protein, low fat. Supplements are ice cream at service period 4 and a half ham sandwich at service period 6. There are also tray orders for early service period 1, late service period 3, and guest tray at dinner.

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1234^NURS|||||^^^199108021700||199108021200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODS|D||011^HIPRO100^99FD1|...<cr>

ODS|D||123^LOFAT20^99FD1|...<cr>

ODS|S|4|119^ICE CREAM^99FD8|...<cr>

ODS|S|6|320^1/2 HAM SANDWICH^99FD8|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1244^NURS|||||^^^199108031700||199108031200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODT|EARLY^Early tray^HL70160|1^^99CBD|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1245^NURS|||||^^^199108031700||199108031200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODT|LATE^Late tray^HL70160|3^^99CBD|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1246^NURS|||||^^^199108031700||199108031200|123^Smith^Bryan^Micha
   el|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODT|GUEST^Guest tray^HL70160|5^DINNER^99CBD|...<cr>
```

4.9.3 Tube feeding

This order specifies Similac with MCT oil and polycose additives.

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1232^NURS|||||60^Q3H^^199108021700||199108021200|123^Smith^Bryan^
   Michael|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>

ODS|D||010^SIMILAC^99DO1|...<cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
ODS|D||011^MCT^99DO1|...<cr>
ODS|D||012^POLYCOSE^99DO1|...<cr>
```

4.9.4 Patient preference

This order specifies that the patient is a vegetarian.

```
MSH|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
ORC|NW|1232^NURS|||||60^Q3H^^199108021700||199108021200|123^Smith^Bryan^
   Michael|456^Web^Mary|...<cr>
ODS|D||123^LOFAT20^99FD1|...<cr>
ODS|S|4|119^ICE CREAM^99FD8|...<cr>
ODS|P||^VEGETARIAN|...<cr>
```

4.10 SUPPLY TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGES

The Requisition Detail segment (RQD) is used for ordering medical, surgical, and patient care supplies. It is assumed that these supplies are managed by a materials management application, which contains a master list of all items the hospital uses.

There are basically two types of supplies, commonly referred to as stock and non-stock.

Stock supplies are, as the name suggests, stocked in the hospital in designated areas, such as the warehouse, Central Supply, Nursing floors, or Operating Room. When requisitioning stock supplies, the requesting application need only specify the information in the RQD segment. It is assumed that this is enough information for the application receiving to identify the item. If the sending application is not aware whether the supply is stock, it may optionally send an RQ1 along with the RQD. Typically in that case, the item is requested with a free text description.

Non-stock supplies are not stocked anywhere in the hospital and must be ordered from an industry distributor or manufacturer. When the requesting application knows that it is requisitioning non-stock supplies, it may also send an RQ1 segment with the RQD if at least one field in RQ1 is known to the sending application. This may be necessary in order for the receiving application to properly determine where to get these supplies. This depends on the sophistication of the database of the receiving application, which may contain a history of requisitions from the sending application.

4.10.1 OMS - stock requisition order message (event O05)

Stock requisition orders use the ORM where RQD is the detail segment for backward compatibility or can use the OMS and ORS messages described below.

OMS^O05^OMS_O05	Stock Requisition Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2

OMS^O05^OMS_O05	Stock Requisition Order Message	Status	Chapter
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
RQD	Requisition Detail		4
[RQ1]	Requisition Detail-1		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RQD)		2
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[BLG]	Billing Segment		4
}	--- ORDER end		

4.10.2 ORS - stock requisition order acknowledgment message (event O06)

ORS^O06^ORS_O06	Stock Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORS^O06^ORS_O06	Stock Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
RQD	Requisition Detail		4
[RQ1]	Requisition Detail-1		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RQD)		2
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.10.3 OMN - non-stock requisition order message (event O07)

Non-stock requisitions can use the ORM message with the RQD and RQ1 segments as the detail segment, or use the OMN and ORN messages described below:

OMN^O07^OMN_O07	Nonstock Requisition Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6

OMN^O07^OMN_O07	Nonstock Requisition Order Message	Status	Chapter
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
RQD	Requisition Detail		4
[RQ1]	Requisition Detail-1		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RQD)		2
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[BLG]	Billing Segment		4
}	--- ORDER end		

4.10.4 ORN - non-stock requisition order acknowledgment message (event O08)

ORN^O08^ORN_O08	General Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORN^O08^ORN_O08	General Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
RQD	Requisition Detail		4
[RQ1]	Requisition Detail-1		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RQD)		2
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.11 SUPPLY SEGMENTS

4.11.1 RQD - Requisition Detail Segment

RQD contains the detail for each requisitioned item. See assumptions above.

HL7 Attribute Table – RQD – Requisition Detail

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			00275	Requisition Line Number
2	250	CE	C			00276	Item Code - Internal
3	250	CE	C			00277	Item Code - External
4	250	CE	C			00278	Hospital Item Code
5	6	NM	O			00279	Requisition Quantity
6	250	CE	O			00280	Requisition Unit of Measure
7	30	IS	O		0319	00281	Dept. Cost Center
8	30	IS	O		0320	00282	Item Natural Account Code
9	250	CE	O			00283	Deliver To ID
10	8	DT	O			00284	Date Needed

4.11.1.0 RQD field definitions

4.11.1.1 RQD-1 Requisition Line Number (SI) 00275

Definition: This field contains the number that identifies this line in the requisition.

4.11.1.2 RQD-2 Item Code - Internal (CE) 00276

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier and description that uniquely identify the item on the application sending the requisition. This field is conditional because at least one of the three fields *RQD-2-item code- internal*, *RQD-3-item code-external*, or *RQD-4-hospital item code* must be valued.

4.11.1.3 RQD-3 Item Code - External (CE) 00277

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier and description that uniquely identify the item on the application receiving the requisition. This field is conditional because at least one of the three fields -- *RQD-2-item code-internal*, *RQD-3-item code-external* or *RQD-4-hospital item code* -- must be valued.

4.11.1.4 RQD-4 Hospital Item Code (CE) 00278

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier and description that uniquely identify the item on all applications in the hospital. The identifier is usually controlled by the hospital financial application in the charge description master file. This field is conditional because at least one of the three fields-- *RQD-2-item code-internal*, *RQD-3-item code-external* or *RQD-4-hospital item code*-- must be valued.

Note: At least one of the three fields 4.11.1.2 through 4.11.1.4must be non-null.

4.11.1.5 RQD-5 Requisition Quantity (NM) 00279

Definition: This field contains the quantity requisitioned for this item.

4.11.1.6 RQD-6 Requisition Unit of Measure (CE) 00280

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the unit of measure for this item.

4.11.1.7 RQD-7 Dept. Cost Center (IS) 00281

Definition: This field contains the accounting code that identifies this department in order to charge for this item. *User-Defined Table 0319 - Department Cost Center* is used as the HL7 identifier for the user-defined table of values for this field.

User-Defined Table 0319 – Department Cost Center

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

4.11.1.8 RQD-8 Item Natural Account Code (IS) 00282

Definition: This field contains the accounting code that identifies this item in order to charge for this item. *User-Defined Table 0320 - Item Natural Account Code* is used as the HL7 identifier for the user-defined table of values for this field.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

User-defined Table 0320 – Item Natural Account Code

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

4.11.1.9 RQD-9 Deliver to ID (CE) 00283

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the unique identifier and descriptive name of the department/location where the item should be delivered.

4.11.1.10 RQD-10 Date Needed (DT) 00284

Definition: This field contains the date this item is required.

Note: Although none of the fields are required, one of the three identifying codes—RQD-2-item code-internal, RQD-3-item code-external, or RQD-4-hospital item code—must be specified in order for the receiving application to process the request.

It is left to the vendors to determine which will be used as the common link between the two applications. HL7 recommends using the *RQD-4-Hospital Item Code*.

Hospital accounting requires an identifier to charge a particular cost center or patient for a requisitioned supply. If the supply is for a patient, then this identifier comes from the PID segment; otherwise, from *RQD-7-Dept. Cost Center* and *RQD-8-Item Natural Account Code* must be used. It is recommended that the "final" cost center responsible for providing the supply to the patient be included, even when the patient ID is provided.

Hospital accounting applications use *RQD-7-Dept. Cost Center* concatenated with *RQD-8-Item Natural Account Code* in order to post this transaction to the General Ledger. This concatenated value should correspond to a valid entry in the accounting applications "Chart of Accounts."

4.11.2 RQ1 - Requisition Detail-1 Segment

RQ1 contains additional detail for each nonstock requisitioned item. This segment definition is paired with a preceding RQD segment.

HL7 Attribute Table – RQ1 – Requisition Detail-1

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	10	ST	O			00285	Anticipated Price
2	250	CE	C		0385	00286	Manufacturer Identifier
3	16	ST	C			00287	Manufacturer's Catalog
4	250	CE	C			00288	Vendor ID
5	16	ST	C			00289	Vendor Catalog
6	1	ID	O		0136	00290	Taxable
7	1	ID	O		0136	00291	Substitute Allowed

4.11.2.0 RQ1 field definitions

4.11.2.1 RQ1-1 Anticipated Price (ST) 00285

Definition: This field contains the reference price for the requisition unit of measure that is known to the requisition application. It may or may not be the actual cost of acquiring the item from a supplier. It is also not the price charged to the patient.

4.11.2.2 RQ1-2 Manufacturer Identifier (CE) 00286

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the unique code that identifies the manufacturer on the application receiving the requisition. This field is conditional because either *RQ1-2-manufacturer ID* and *RQ1-3-manufacturer's catalog* or *RQ1-4-vendor ID* and *RQ1-5-vendor catalog* must be valued.

Refer to *User-defined Table 0385 – Manufacturer identifier* for suggested values, or relevant external code sets may be used (e.g., HIBCC Manufacturers Labeler ID Code (LIC), UPC, NDC).

4.11.2.3 RQ1-3 Manufacturer's Catalog (ST) 00287

Definition: This field is the manufacturer's catalog number or code for this item. This field is conditional because either *RQ1-2-manufacturer ID* and *RQ1-3-manufacturer's catalog* or *RQ1-4-vendor ID* and *RQ1-5-vendor catalog* must be valued.

4.11.2.4 RQ1-4 Vendor ID (CE) 00288

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the unique code that identifies the vendor on the application receiving the requisition. This field is conditional because either *RQ1-2-manufacturer ID* and *RQ1-3-manufacturer's catalog* or *RQ1-4-vendor ID* and *RQ1-5-vendor catalog* must be valued.

Because of this, it is recommended that each nonstock item have *RQ1-2-manufacturers ID* and *RQ1-3-manufacturer's catalog*, or *RQ1-4-vendor ID* and *RQ1-5-vendor catalog*. It is also possible that the requisitioning application will not know the identifier, as listed in the Manufacturer's or Vendor's catalog. In this case, it is important to include the name portion of this coded element field.

4.11.2.5 RQ1-5 Vendor Catalog (ST) 00289

Definition: This field is the vendor's catalog number, name, or code for this item. This field is conditional because either *RQ1-2-manufacturer ID* and *RQ1-3-manufacturer's catalog* or *RQ1-4-vendor ID* and *RQ1-5-vendor catalog* must be valued.

4.11.2.6 RQ1-6 Taxable (ID) 00290

Definition: This field indicates whether this item is subject to tax.

In general, nonstock requisitioned items will be printed by the receiving application and then processed by a human. In other words, the human will use the information to call the vendor or manufacturer to get pricing and other related purchasing information before placing the order with an outside vendor. Refer to *HL7 Table 0136 -Yes/No Indicator* as defined in Chapter 2.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.11.2.7 RQ1-7 Substitute Allowed (ID) 00291

Definition: This field indicates whether the ancillary department may substitute an equivalent version of the item(s) ordered. Refer to *HL7 Table 0136 - Yes/No Indicator* as defined in Chapter 2.

4.12 SUPPLY MESSAGE EXAMPLES

4.12.1 Patient order

This example is a requisition from the ORSUPPLY application to the MMSUPPLY application for two items for patient John J. Smith. One item is a stock item for an IV Solution and the second item is a nonstock implant manufactured by Detter. The requisition numbers used by the ORSUPPLY application are RQ101 & RQ102.

```
MSH|^~\&|ORSUPPLY|ORSYS|MMSUPPLY|MMSYS|19911105131523||OMS^O05^OMS_O05|
   ...<cr>

PID|... <cr>

ORC|NW|RQ101^ORSUPPLY||||N|||19911105130000|jjones^Jones^Jean|sgomez^Gom
   ez^Susan|MAINOR^2W|321-1234 X2304^^^^^^3211234^2304|...<cr>

RQD|1|1234^Solution, 2.25% Saline||S1786^Saline
   Solution|1|BT^Bottle|1234-5678||ORSUP^Main OR Supply
   Room|19901123|...<cr>


MSH|^~\&|ORSUPPLY|ORSYS|MMSUPPLY|MMSYS|19911105131523||OMN^O07^OMN_O07|.
   ..<cr>

PID|... <cr>

ORC|NW|RQ102^ORSUPPLY||||N|||19911105130000|jjones^Jones^Jean|sgomez^Gom
   ez^Susan|MAINOR^2W|321-1234 X2304^^^^^^3211234^2304<cr>

RQD|1|23455^Implant, Special Hip||I45323^Implant|1|EA^
   Each|1234-5678||ORSUP^Main OR Supply Room|19901123|...<cr>

RQ1|123.45|DET^Detter, Inc.|444456|DST^Local Distributors,
   Inc.|333-456|N|...<cr>
```

4.12.2 Replenish Supply Closet

This example is a requisition from the ORSUPPLY application to the MMSUPPLY application for five stock items to replenish a supply closet. The requisition numbers used by the ORSUPPLY application is RQ103 - RQ1037.

```
MSH|^~\&|ORSUPPLY|ORSYS|MMSUPPLY|MMSYS|19911105131523||OMS^O05^OMS_O05|.
   ..<cr>

ORC|NW|RQ103^ORSUPPLY||||N|||19911105130000|jjones^Jones^Jean|sgomez^Gom
   ez^Susan|MAINOR^2W|321-1234 X2304^^^^^^3211234^2304|...<cr>

RQD|1|1232^Solution, 1% Saline||S1784^Saline
   Solution|5|BT^Bottle|1234-5678||ORSUP^Main OR Supply
   Room|19901105|...<cr>

ORC|NW|RQ104^ORSUPPLY||||N|||19911105130000|jjones^Jones^Jean|sgomez^Gom
   ez^Susan|MAINOR^2W|321-1234 X2304^^^^^^3211234^2304|...<cr>
```

```
RQD|2|1231^Solution, 0.2% Saline||S1781^Saline
Solution|2|BT^Bottle|1234-5678||ORSUP^Main OR Supply
Room|19901105|...<cr>

ORC|NW|RQ105^ORSUPPLY||||N|||19911105130000|jjones^Jones^Jean|sgomez^Gom
   ez^Susan|MAINOR^2W|321-1234 X2304^^^^^^3211234^2304|...<cr>

RQD|3|2342^Suture, Black
   Silk||SU123^Suture|2|DZ^Dozen|1234-5678||ORSUP^Main OR Supply
   Room|19901105|...<cr>

ORC|NW|RQ106^ORSUPPLY||||N|||19911105130000|jjones^Jones^Jean|sgomez^Gom
   ez^Susan|MAINOR^2W|321-1234 X2304^^^^^^3211234^2304|...<cr>

RQD|4|2344^Suture, Black Silk
   3-0||SU124^Suture|1|DZ^Dozen|1234-5678||ORSUP^Main OR Supply
   Room|19901105|...<cr>

ORC|NW|RQ107^ORSUPPLY||||N|||19911105130000|jjones^Jones^Jean|sgomez^Gom
   ez^Susan|MAINOR^2W|321-1234 X2304^^^^^^3211234^2304|...<cr>

RQD|5|4565^Bandage Pad, 4x4||B6345^Bandage
   Pad|3|BX^Box|1234-5678||ORSUP^Main OR Supply Room|19901105|...<cr>
```

4.13 PHARMACY/TREATMENT TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGES

4.13.1 Usage notes for pharmacy/treatment messages

For the RDS (pharmacy/treatment dispense), RGV (pharmacy/treatment give) and RAS (pharmacy/treatment administration) messages, the placer and filler order numbers are those of the parent RDE (pharmacy/treatment encoded order) message. In these messages, the filler order number does not provide a unique identification of the instance of the pharmacy/treatment action (dispense, give or administer). To correct this problem, each of the defining segments (RXD, RXG, and RXA) has an appropriately named sub-ID field (dispense sub-ID counter, give sub-ID counter, and administration sub-ID counter). The combination of the filler order number (including its application ID component) and the appropriate sub-ID counter uniquely identifies the instance of the pharmacy/treatment action(s) present in these messages.

Although the default order control code for the RDE, RDS, RGV and RAS messages is "RE," there are cases in which the pharmacy or treatment system and the receiving system must communicate changes in state. Depending on whether the pharmacy or treatment supplier's relationship to the receiving system is that of placer or filler, the appropriate order control code may be substituted for the default value of RE. The receiving system can also use an appropriate order control code to report status back to the pharmacy or treatment system.

For example, suppose that a pharmacy or treatment system is sending RGV messages to a nursing system which will administer the medication and that the pharmacy or treatment system needs to request that several instances of a give order be discontinued. To implement this request, the RGV message may be sent with a "DC" order control code (discontinue request), and the appropriate RXG segments whose give sub-ID fields identify the instances to be discontinued. If a notification back to the pharmacy or treatment supplier is needed, the nursing system can initiate an RGV message with a "DR" order control code (discontinue as requested), and containing RXG segments whose give sub-ID fields identify the discontinued instances.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.13.2 IV solution groups

An order for a group of IV solutions to be given sequentially can be supported in two similar ways: Parent/Child and Separate Orders. This HL7 Standard supports both methods of ordering. The method used at a particular site must be negotiated between the site institution and the various application vendors. See Chapter 2, Section 2.A.53 OSD Order Sequence Definition, "Use Case 1 Cyclic placer order groups," for further details.

4.13.3 OMP - Pharmacy/Treatment Order Message (Event O09)

Pharmacy/Treatment Orders can use the ORM message with the RXO, RXC, and RXR segments for the detail segment, or use the OMP and ORP messages as described below.

OMP^O09^OMP_O09	Pharmacy/treatment Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
RXO	Pharmacy/Treatment Order		4

OMP^O09^OMP_O09	Pharmacy/treatment Order Message	Status	Chapter
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXO)		2
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{	--- COMPONENT begin		
RXC	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for each RXC)		2
}]	--- COMPONENT end		
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Transaction		6
[BLG]	Billing Segment		6
}	--- ORDER end		

4.13.4 ORP - Pharmacy/Treatment Order Acknowledgment (Event O10)

ORP^O10^ORP_O10	Description	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Response Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL begin		
RXO	Pharmacy/Treatment Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXO)		2

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

ORP^O10^ORP_O10	Description	Status	Chapter
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{	--- COMPONENT begin		
RXC	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for each RXC)		2
}]	--- COMPONENT end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL end		
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.13.5 RDE - Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Message (Event O11)

This message communicates the pharmacy or treatment application's encoding of the pharmacy/treatment order (ORM message with RXO segment, see above). It may be sent as an unsolicited message to report on either a single order or multiple pharmacy/treatment orders for a patient.

The RDE/RRE message pair can also be used to communicate a refill authorization request, however, a specific trigger event has been assigned. See *Section 4.13.13 "RDE - Pharmacy/Treatment Refill Authorization Request Message* (Event O25)*."* As a site-specific variant, the original order segments (RXO, RXRs, associated RXCs, and any NTEs) may be sent optionally (for comparison).

RDE^O11^RDE_O11	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3

RDE^O11^RDE_O11	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Message	Status	Chapter
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL begin		
RXO	Pharmacy/Treatment Prescription Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXO)		2
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{	--- COMPONENT begin		
RXC	Pharmacy/Treatment Component (for RXO)		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for each RXC)		2
}]	--- COMPONENT end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL end		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXE)		2
{	--- TIMING_ENCODED begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_ENCODED end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component (for RXE)		4
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Results		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Detail		6
[BLG]	Billing Segment		4
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
}	--- ORDER end		

Note: The RXCs which follow the RXO may not be fully encoded, but those that follow the RXE must be fully encoded.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

The NTE segment(s) following the PD1 segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the patient.

The NTE segment(s) following the RXO segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the pharmacy/treatment order.

The NTE segment(s) following the RXE segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the encoded order.

The NTE segment(s) **following** the RXC segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the component(s).

The NTE segment following the OBX segment is intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the results.

4.13.6 RRE - Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Acknowledgment (Event O12)

RRE^O12^RRE_O12	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ENCODING begin		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXE)		2
{	--- TIMING_ENCODED begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_ENCODED end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4

RRE^O12^RRE_O12	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- ENCODING end		
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

The use of RDE with the trigger of O01 and RRE with the trigger O02 is maintained for backward compatibility.

4.13.7 RDS - Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense Message (Event O13)

The RDS message may be created by the pharmacy/treatment application for each instance of dispensing a drug or treatment to fill an existing order or orders. In the most common case, the RDS messages would be routed to a Nursing application or to some clinical application, which needs the data about drugs dispensed or treatments given. As a site-specific variant, the original order segments (RXO, RXE and their associated RXR/RXCs) may be sent optionally (for comparison).

The ORC must have the filler order number and the order control code RE. The RXE and associated RXCs may be present if the receiving application needs any of their data. The RXD carries the dispense data for a given issuance of medication: thus it may describe a single dose, a half-day dose, a daily dose, a refill of a prescription, etc. The RXD is not a complete record of an order. Use the RXO and RXE segments if a complete order is needed. It is a record from the pharmacy or treatment supplier to the Nursing application (or other) with drug/treatment dispense and administration instructions.

The FT1 segment is optional and repeating in order to accommodate multiple charge, benefit and pricing situations. Example use cases demonstrating zero, one and two FT1 segments follow:

In the case where the RDS message represents a dispense event that is in process (i.e., has not been received by the patient), the financial transactions associated with the dispense do not yet exist. Until the financial transactions associated with the dispense event have been completed, no FT1 segment may exist in the message.

In the case where the RDS message represents a dispense event that has been received by the patient, and thus all financial transactions have been completed, the RDS message may contain one or more FT1 segments. Examples of single and multiple FT1 segments follow.

Payment for the dispense event completed by a single payor:

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052911150700||RDS^O13^RDS_O13|...
   <cr>
PID|...<cr>
ORC|RE|...<cr>
RXD|1|00310-0131-10^LISINOPRIL 10MG
   TABLET^NDC|199907150830|100|TAB|...<cr>
FT1|1|||199907151035||PY|00310-0131-10^LISINOPRIL 10MG
   TABLET^NDC|||100|125.43&USD|...<cr>
```

Payment for the dispense event involves multiple payment sources:

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052213000700||RDS^O13^RDS_O13|...
   <cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
PID|...<cr>

ORC|RE|...<cr>

RXD|1|00340-0241-10^VERAPAMIL 120MG
   TABLET^NDC|199907200940|100|TAB|...<cr>

FT1|1|||199907211055||CD|00340024110^VERAPAMIL 120MG TABLET
   ^NDC|||100|55.43&USD|...<cr>   (amount paid by insurance)

FT1|2|||199907211055||CP|00340024110^VERAPAMIL 120MG TABLET
   ^NDC|||100|5.00&USD|...<cr>        (copay paid by patient)
```

The use of RDS with the trigger of O01 and RRD with the trigger O02 is maintained for backward compatibility.

RDS^O13^RDS_O13	Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL begin		
RXO	Pharmacy /Treatment Order		4
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL_SUPPLEMENT begin		
{ NTE }	Notes and Comments (for RXO)		2
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{	--- COMPONENT begin		
RXC	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4

RDS^O13^RDS_O13	Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense Message	Status	Chapter
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for each RXC)		2
}]	--- COMPONENT end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL_SUPPLEMENT end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL end		
[	--- ENCODING begin		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXE)		2
{	--- TIMING_ENCODED begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_ENCODED end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- ENCODING end		
RXD	Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXD)		2
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Results		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Transaction segment		6
}	--- ORDER end		

Note: The NTE segment(s) following the PD1 segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the patient.

The NTE segment(s) following the RXO segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the pharmacy/treatment order.

The NTE segment(s) following the RXE segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the encoded order.

The NTE segment(s) following the RXD segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the dispense event.

The NTE segment(s) following the RXC segment are intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the component(s).

The NTE segment following the OBX segment is intended to communicate notes and comments relative to the results.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.13.8 RRD - Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense Acknowledgement Message (Event O14)

RRD^O14^RRD_O14	Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- DISPENSE begin		
RXD	Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXD)		2
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- DISPENSE end		
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.13.9 RGV - Pharmacy/Treatment Give Message (Event O15)

The RDS message's RXD segment carries the dispense data for a given issuance of medication: thus it may describe a single dose, a half-day dose, a daily dose, a refill of a prescription, etc. It does not contain the given instructions or scheduling information. When this "give" (i.e., administration) information needs to be transmitted from the pharmacy or treatment application to another application, it is done with the RGV message.

The RGV message uses the RXG segment to record drug or treatment administration instructions. It may carry information about a single scheduled administration on a drug or treatment, or it may carry information about multiple administrations. If the pharmacy or treatment application (or some other

application) needs to create a nonambiguous MAR report where each administration is matched to a particular give date/time instruction, it may use the RGV message as described in the following way:

For each scheduled administration of the medication, the pharmacy/treatment issues either a single RGV message or a single RGV message with multiple RXG segments, one for each scheduled administration. The actual administrations (transmitted by one or more RAS messages) are matched against the scheduled ones by recording in each RXA segment the Give Sub-ID of the corresponding RXG segment. If more than one administration needs to be matched (as in the case of recording a change or rate of an IV solution) the administering application issues additional RXA segment(s) (corresponding to the same RXG segment). If no matching is needed, the Give Sub-ID of the RXA segments has the value zero (0).

The ORC must have the filler order number and the order control code RE. The RXE and associated RXCs may be present if the receiving application needs any of their data. The RXG carries the scheduled administration data for either a single "give instruction" (single dose) of medication or for multiple "give instructions." The RXG is not a complete record of an order. Use the RXO and RXE segments if a complete order is needed. It is a record from the pharmacy or treatment application to the Nursing application (or other) with drug/treatment administration instructions.

RGV^O15^RGV_O15	Pharmacy/Treatment Give	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL begin		
RXO	Pharmacy /Treatment Order		4
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL_SUPPLEMENT begin		
{ NTE }	Notes and Comments (for RXO)		2
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

RGV^O15^RGV_O15	Pharmacy/Treatment Give	Status	Chapter
[{	--- COMPONENTS begin		
RXC	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for each RXC)		2
}]	--- COMPONENTS end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL_SUPPLEMENT end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL end		
[	--- ENCODING begin		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
{	--- TIMING_ENCODED begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_ENCODED end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- ENCODING end		
{	--- GIVE begin		
RXG	Pharmacy/Treatment Give		4
{	--- TIMING_GIVE begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_GIVE end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
[OBX]	Observation/Results		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}	--- OBSERVATION end		
}	--- GIVE end		
}	--- ORDER end		

4.13.10 RRG - Pharmacy/Treatment Give Acknowledgment Message (Event O16)

RRG^O16^RRG_O16	Pharmacy/Treatment Give Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2

RRG^O16^RRG_O16	Pharmacy/Treatment Give Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- GIVE begin		
RXG	Pharmacy/Treatment Give		4
{	--- TIMING_GIVE begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_GIVE end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- GIVE end		
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

The use of RGV with the trigger of O01 and RRG with the trigger O02 is maintained for backward compatibility.

4.13.11 RAS - Pharmacy/Treatment Administration Message (Event O17)

The RAS message may be created by the administering application (e.g., nursing application) for each instance of administration for an existing order. If the administering application wants to report several administrations of medication/treatment for a given order with a single RAS message, each instance is reported by a separate (repeating) RXA segment. In addition, the administration records for a group of orders may be sent in a single message by creating repeating groups of segments at the ORC level.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

In the most common case, the RAS messages would be sent from a nursing application to the pharmacy or treatment application (or to the ordering application or another clinical application), which could use the data to generate the medication administration reports. Multiple RXA segments, each corresponding to a separate administration instance for a given order, may be sent with a single ORC.

RAS^O17^RAS_O17	Pharmacy/Treatment Administration	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL begin		
RXO	Pharmacy /Treatment Order		4
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL_SUPPLEMENT begin		
{ NTE }	Notes and Comments (for RXO)		2
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{	--- COMPONENTS begin		
RXC	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for each RXC)		2
}]	--- COMPONENTS end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL_SUPPLEMENT end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL end		
[	--- ENCODING begin		

RAS^O17^RAS_O17	Pharmacy/Treatment Administration	Status	Chapter
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
{	--- TIMING_ENCODED begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_ENCODED end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- ENCODING end		
{	--- ADMINISTRATION begin		
{ RXA }	Pharmacy/Treatment Administration		4
RXR	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
}	--- ADMINISTRATION end		
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
}	--- ORDER end		

4.13.12 RRA - Pharmacy/Treatment Administration Acknowledgment Message (Event O18)

RRA^O18^RRA_O18	Pharmacy/Treatment Administration Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

RRA^O18^RRA_O18		Pharmacy/Treatment Administration Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
	[{	--- TIMING begin		
	TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
	[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
	}]	--- TIMING end		
	[	--- ADMINISTRATION begin		
	{ RXA }	Pharmacy/Treatment Administration		4
	RXR	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
	]	--- ADMINISTRATION end		
}		--- ORDER end		
]		--- RESPONSE end		

The use of RAS with the trigger of O01 and RRA with the trigger O02 is maintained for backward compatibility.

4.13.13 RDE - Pharmacy/Treatment Refill Authorization Request Message (Event O25)

The RDE/RRE is used to communicate a refill authorization request originating with the pharmacy. This message replicates the standard RDE message with a different trigger event code to indicate the specific use case of a refill authorization request.

RDE^O25^RDE_O11		Pharmacy/Treatment Refill Authorization Request	Status	Chapter
MSH		Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]		Software		2
[{ NTE }]		Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[		--- PATIENT begin		
	PID	Patient Identification		3
	[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
	[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
	[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
	PV1	Patient Visit		3
	[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
	]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
	[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
	IN1	Insurance		
	[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
	[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info – Cert.		6

RDE^O25^RDE_O11	Pharmacy/Treatment Refill Authorization Request	Status	Chapter
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL begin		
RXO	Pharmacy/Treatment Prescription Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXO)		2
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{	--- COMPONENTS begin		
RXC	Pharmacy/Treatment Component (for RXO)		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for each RXC)		2
}]	--- COMPONENTS end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL end		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXE)		2
{	--- TIMING_ENCODED begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_ENCODED end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component (for RXE)		4
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
[OBX]	Results		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Detail		6
[BLG]	Billing Segment		4

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

RDE^O25^RDE_O11	Pharmacy/Treatment Refill Authorization Request	Status	Chapter
[{ CTI }]	Clinical Trial Identification		7
}	--- ORDER end		

4.13.14 RRE - Pharmacy/Treatment Refill Authorization Request Acknowledgment (Event O26)

RRE^O26^RRE_O12	Pharmacy/Treatment Refill Authorization Request Acknowledgment Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ENCODING begin		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
{	--- TIMING_ENCODED begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}	--- TIMING_ENCODED end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- ENCODING end		
}	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.13.15 ROR - Pharmacy/Treatment Order Response (Event Q26)

This query/response pair is retained for backward compatibility only. Please refer to Chapter 5 for detailed coverage of query/response methodology to be employed in Versions 2.4 and later.

QRY^Q26^QRY_Q01	Query Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filler		5
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

ROR^ROR^ROR_ROR	Pharmacy /Treatment Order Response	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
{	--- DEFINITION begin		
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filter		5
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
RXO	Pharmacy/Treatment Order		4
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
}	--- ORDER end		
}	--- DEFINITION end		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

4.13.16 RAR - Pharmacy/Treatment Administration Information (Event Q27)

This query/response pair is retained for backward compatibility only. Please refer to Chapter 5 for detailed coverage of query/response methodology to be employed in Versions 2.4 and later.

QRY^Q27^QRY_Q01	Query Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

QRY^Q27^QRY_Q01	Query Message	Status	Chapter
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filler		5
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

RAR^RAR^RAR_RAR	Pharmacy/treatment Administration Information	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
{	--- DEFINITION begin		
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filter		5
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[	--- ENCODING begin		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- ENCODING end		
{ RXA }	Pharmacy/Treatment Administration		4
RXR	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
}	--- ORDER end		
}	--- DEFINITION end		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

4.13.17 RDR - Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense Information (Event Q28)

This query/response pair is retained for backward compatibility only. Please refer to Chapter 5 for detailed coverage of query/response methodology to be employed in Versions 2.4 and later.

QRY^Q28^QRY_Q01	Query Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2

QRY^Q28^QRY_Q01	Query Message	Status	Chapter
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filler		5
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

RDR^RDR^RDR_RDR	Pharmacy/treatment Dispense Information	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
{	--- DEFINITION begin		
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filter		5
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[	--- ENCODING begin		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
]	--- ENCODING end		
{	--- DISPENSE begin		
RXD	Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense		4
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
}	--- DISPENSE end		
}	--- ORDER end		
}	--- DEFINITION end		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.13.18 RER - Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Information (Event Q29)

This query/response pair is retained for backward compatibility only. Please refer to Chapter 5 for detailed coverage of query/response methodology to be employed in Versions 2.4 and later.

QRY^Q29^QRY_Q01	Query Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filler		5
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

RER^RER^RER_RER	Pharmacy/treatment Encoded Order Information	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
{	--- DEFINITION begin		
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filter		5
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
}	--- ORDER end		
}	--- DEFINITION end		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

4.13.19 RGR - Pharmacy/Treatment Dose Information (Event Q30)

This query/response pair is retained for backward compatibility only. Please refer to Chapter 5 for detailed coverage of query/response methodology to be employed in Versions 2.4 and later.

QRY^Q30^QRY_Q01	Query Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filler		5
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

RGR^RGR^RGR_RGR	Pharmacy/treatment Dose Information	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
{	--- DEFINITION begin		
QRD	Query Definition		5
[QRF]	Query Filter		5
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[	--- ENCODING begin		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/treatment Component		4
]	--- ENCODING end		
{ RXG }	Pharmacy/Treatment Give		4
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4
}	--- ORDER end		
}	--- DEFINITION end		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.13.20 Pharmacy Query/Response Message Pair

Conformance Statement

Query Statement ID (Query ID=Q31):	Q31
Type:	Query
Query Name:	Dispense History
Query Trigger (= MSH-9):	QBP^Q31^QBP_Q11
Query Mode:	Both
Response Trigger (= MSH-9):	RSP^K31^RSP_K31
Query Characteristics:	May specify patient, medication, a date range, and how the response is to be sorted.
Purpose:	To retrieve patient pharmacy dispense history information from the Server.
Response Characteristics:	Sorted by Medication Dispensed unless otherwise specified in **SortControl.**
Based on Segment Pattern:	RDS_O01

QBP^Q31^QBP_Q11	Query Grammar: QBP Message	Status	Section Reference
MSH	Message Header Segment		2.15.9
[{ SFT }]	Software		2.15.12
QPD	Query Parameter Definition		5.5.3
RCP	Response Control Parameter		5.5.6
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2.15.4

RSP^K31^RSP_K31	Response Grammar: Pharmacy Dispense Message	Status	Sec Ref
MSH	Message Header		2.15.9
MSA	Message Acknowledgement		2.15.8
[{ ERR }]	Error		2.15.5
[{ SFT }]	Software		2.15.12
QAK	Query Acknowledgement		5.5.2
QPD	Query Parameter Definition		5.5.3
RCP	Response Control Parameter		5.5.6
{	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3.3.2
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3.3.9
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for PID)		2.15.10

RSP^K31^RSP_K31	Response Grammar: Pharmacy Dispense Message	Status	Sec Ref
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3.3.6
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3.3.3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3.3.4
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4.5.1
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4.5.4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4.5.5
}]	--- TIMING end		
[	--- ORDER_DETAIL begin		
RXO	Pharmacy/Treatment Order		4.14.1
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for RXO)		2.15.10
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4.14.2
[{	--- COMPONENTS begin		
RXC	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4.14.3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for each RXC)		2.15.10
}]	--- COMPONENTS end		
]	--- ORDER_DETAIL end		
[	--- ENCODING begin		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order		4.14.4
{	--- TIMING_ENCODED begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4.5.4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4.5.5
}	--- TIMING_ENCODED end		
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4.14.2
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4.14.3
]	--- ENCODING end		
RXD	Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense		4.14.5
{ RXR }	Pharmacy/Treatment Route		4.14.2
[{ RXC }]	Pharmacy/Treatment Component		4.14.3

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

RSP^K31^RSP_K31	Response Grammar: Pharmacy Dispense Message	Status	Sec Ref
{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
[OBX]	Results		7.14.2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for OBX)		2.15.10
}	--- OBSERVATION end		
}	--- ORDER end		
}	--- RESPONSE end		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer		2.15.4

QPD Input Parameter Specification

Field Seq (Query ID=Q31)	Name	Key/ Search	Sort	LEN	TYPE	Opt	Rep	Match Op	TBL	Segment Field Name	Service Identifier Code	ElementName
1	MessageQueryName			60	CE	R						
2	QueryTag			32	ST	R						
	PatientList	**S**	**Y**	**20**	**CX**	**O**				PID.3		PID-3: Patient Identifier List
	MedicationDispensed	S	Y	100	CE	O		=		RXD.2		RXD-2: Dispense/ Give Code
	DispenseDate.LL	S	Y	26	TS	O		>=		RXD.3		RXD-3: Date/Time Dispensed
	DispenseDate.UL	S	Y	26	TS	O		<=		RXD.3		RXD-3: Date/Time Dispensed

QPD Input Parameter Field Description and Commentary

Input Parameter (Query ID=Q31)	Comp. Name	DT	Description
MessageQueryName		CE	Must be valued **Q31^Dispense History^HL7nnnn**.
QueryTag		ST	Unique to each query message instance.
PatientList		CX	The combination of values for *PatientList.ID, and PatientList.AssigningAuthority,* are intended to identify a unique entry on the PATIENT_MASTER table. The *PatientList.IdentifierTypeCode* is useful for further filtering or to supply uniqueness in the event that the assigning authority may have more than one coding system. (The PATIENT_MASTER table contains a constraint that prevents multiple patients from being identified by the same combination of field values.) This PATIENT_MASTER entry will be searched against on the PHARMACY_DISPENSE_TRANSACTION table to retrieve the rows fulfilling the query conditions. If this field is not valued, all values for this field are considered to be a match.

Input Parameter (Query ID=Q31)	Comp. Name	DT	Description
			If one PID.3 is specified, only 1 segment pattern will be returned.
	ID	ID	If this field, PID.3.1, is not valued, all values for this field are considered to be a match.
	Assigning Authority	HD	If this field, PID.3.4, is not valued, all values for this field are considered to be a match.
	Identifier type code	IS	If this field, PID.3.5, is not valued, all values for this field are considered to be a match.
MedicationDispensed		CE	If this field is not valued, all values for this field are considered to be a match.
DispenseDate.LL		TS	This is the earliest value to be returned for Date/Time Dispensed. If this field is not valued, all values for this field are considered to be a match.
DispenseDate.UL		TS	This is the latest value to be returned for Date/Time Dispensed. If this field is not valued, all values for this field are considered to be a match.

4.13.20.1 Example

Example: The user wishes to know all the medications dispensed for the patient whose medical record number is "555444222111" for the period beginning 5/31/98 and ending 5/31/99. The following QBP message is generated.

```
MSH|^&~\|PCR|Gen Hosp|PIMS||199811201400-
   0800||QBP^Q31^QBP_Q11|ACK9901|P|2.4|||||||

QPD|Q31^Dispense
   History^HL7nnnn|Q001|555444222111^^^MPI^MR||19980531|19990531|

RCP|I|999^RD|
```

The pharmacy system identifies medical record number "555444222111" as belonging to Adam Everyman and locates 4 prescription dispenses for the period beginning 5/31/98 and ending 5/31/99and returns the following RSP message:

```
MSH|^&~\|PIMS|Gen hosp|PCR||199811201400-
   0800||RSP^K31^RSP_K31|8858|P|2.4|||||||

MSA|AA|ACK9901|

QAK|Q001|OK|Q31^Dispense History^HL7nnnn|4|

QPD|Q31^Dispense
   History^HL7nnnn|Q001|555444222111^^^MPI^MR||19980531|19990531|

PID|||555444222111^^^MPI^MR||Everyman^Adam||19600614|M||C|2101 Webster #
   106^^Oakland^CA^94612||^^^^^510^6271111|^^^^^510^6277654||||34313226
   6|||N|||||||||

ORC|RE||89968665||||||199805121345-
   0700|||77^Hippocrates^Harold^H^III^DR^MD||^^^^^510^ 2673600||||||

RXE|1^BID^^19980529|00378112001^Verapamil Hydrochloride 120 mg TAB^NDC
   |120||mgm|||||||||||||||||||||||||

RXD|1|00378112001^Verapamil Hydrochloride 120 mg TAB^NDC |199805291115-
   0700|100|||1331665|3|||||||||||||||

RXR|PO||||

ORC|RE||89968665||||||199805291030-
   0700|||77^Hippocrates^Harold^H^III^DR^MD||^^^^^510^ 2673600||||||

RXE|1^^D100^^20020731^^^TAKE 1 TABLET DAILY --GENERIC FOR CALAN
   SR|00182196901^VERAPAMIL HCL ER TAB 180MG ER^NDC |100||180MG|TABLET
   SA|||G|||0|BC3126631^CHU^Y^L||213220929|0|0|19980821|||
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
RXD|1|00182196901^VERAPAMIL HCL ER TAB 180MG ER^NDC
   |19980821|100|||213220929|0|TAKE 1 TABLET DAILY --GENERIC FOR CALAN
   SR|||||||||||

RXR|PO||||

ORC|RE||235134037||||||199809221330-
   0700|||88^Semmelweis^Samuel^^^DR^MD||^^^^^510^ 2673900||||||

RXD|1|00172409660^BACLOFEN 10MG TABS^NDC|199809221415-
   0700|10|||235134037|5|AS DIRECTED|||||||||||

RXR|PO||||

ORC|RE||235134030||||||199810121030-
   0700|||99^Lister^Lenora^^^DR^MD||^^^^^510^ 2673700||||||

RXD|1|00054384163^THEOPHYLLINE 80MG/15ML SOLN^NDC|199810121145-
   0700|10|||235134030|5|AS DIRECTED|||||||||||

RXR|PO
```

4.14 PHARMACY/TREATMENT SEGMENTS

4.14.1 RXO - Pharmacy/Treatment Order Segment

This is the "master" pharmacy/treatment order segment. It contains order data not specific to components or additives. Unlike the OBR, it does not contain status fields or other data that are results-only.

It can be used for any type of pharmacy order, including inpatient (unit dose and compound unit dose), outpatient, IVs, and hyperalimentation IVs (nutritional IVs), as well as other nonpharmacy treatments, e.g., respiratory therapy, oxygen, and many nursing treatments.

In addition to the pharmaceutical/treatment information, this segment contains additional data such as provider and text comments.

A quantity/timing field is not needed in the RXO segment. The ORC segment contains the requested *ORC-7-quantity/timing* of the original order which does not change as the order is encoded, dispensed, or administered.

HL7 Attribute Table – RXO – Pharmacy/Treatment Order

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	CE	C			00292	Requested Give Code
2	20	NM	C			00293	Requested Give Amount - Minimum
3	20	NM	O			00294	Requested Give Amount - Maximum
4	250	CE	C			00295	Requested Give Units
5	250	CE	C			00296	Requested Dosage Form
6	250	CE	O	Y		00297	Provider's Pharmacy/Treatment Instructions
7	250	CE	O	Y		00298	Provider's Administration Instructions
8	200	LA1	O			00299	Deliver-To Location
9	1	ID	O		0161	00300	Allow Substitutions
10	250	CE	O			00301	Requested Dispense Code

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
11	20	NM	O			00302	Requested Dispense Amount
12	250	CE	O			00303	Requested Dispense Units
13	3	NM	O			00304	Number Of Refills
14	250	XCN	C	Y		00305	Ordering Provider's DEA Number
15	250	XCN	C	Y		00306	Pharmacist/Treatment Supplier's Verifier ID
16	1	ID	O		0136	00307	Needs Human Review
17	20	ST	C			00308	Requested Give Per (Time Unit)
18	20	NM	O			01121	Requested Give Strength
19	250	CE	O			01122	Requested Give Strength Units
20	250	CE	O	Y		01123	Indication
21	6	ST	O			01218	Requested Give Rate Amount
22	250	CE	O			01219	Requested Give Rate Units
23	10	CQ	O			00329	Total Daily Dose
24	250	CE	O	Y		01476	Supplementary Code
25	5	NM	O			01666	Requested Drug Strength Volume
26	250	CWE	O			01667	Requested Drug Strength Volume Units
27	1	ID	O		0480	01668	Pharmacy Order Type
28	20	NM	O			01669	Dispensing Interval

4.14.1.0 RXO field definitions

4.14.1.1 RXO-1 Requested Give Code (CE) 00292

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the treatment product or treatment ordered to be given to the patient; it is analogous to *OBR-4-universal service ID* in function. Examples of treatments products include medications and certain devices or supplies, e.g., inhaler spacers, blood glucose monitors, syringes, infusion sets, which might require prescription.

Often the coded entry implies dosage form and a dosage form is required in addition to the product name. When the give code does not include the dosage form, use *RXO-5-requested dosage form*. When the give code does not include the strength, use *RXO-18-requested give strength and the RXO-19-requested give units. Realize that strengths do not apply to some such orders.*

The RXO-1, RXO-2 and RXO-4 are mandatory unless the prescription/treatment is transmitted as free text using RXO-6, then RXO-1, RXO-2, and RXO-4 may be blank and the first subcomponent of RXO-6 must be blank.

Use of the RXO-6.2 versus the RXO-1.2 for a free text order is dependent on whether or not the free text describes a product or if it is more commentary in nature.

Please refer to the request –to-dispense fields RXO-10, RXO-11, and RXO-12 for a discussion of the interrelationship with the request-to-give fields.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.14.1.2 RXO-2 Requested Give Amount - Minimum (NM) 00293

Definition: This field is the ordered amount. In a variable dose order, this is the minimum ordered amount. In a non-varying dose order, this is the exact amount of the order.

The RXO-1, RXO-2 and RXO-4 are mandatory unless the prescription/treatment is transmitted as free text using RXO-6, then RXO-1, RXO-2, and RXO-4 may be blank and the first subcomponent of RXO-6 must be blank.

Note: This field is not a duplication of the first component of the quantity/timing field, since in non-pharmacy/treatment orders, that component can be used to specify multiples of an ordered amount.

Another way to say this is that, for pharmacy/treatment orders, the quantity component of the quantity/timing field refers to what is to be given out at each service interval; thus, in terms of the RX order, that first component always defaults to 1. Hence, in the actual execution of the order, the value of 1 in the first component of the quantity/timing field always refers to one administration of the amount specified in this field (the Requested Give Amount field).

4.14.1.3 RXO-3 Requested Give Amount - Maximum (NM) 00294

Definition: In a variable dose order, this is the maximum ordered amount. In a non-varying dose order, this field is not used.

4.14.1.4 RXO-4 Requested Give Units (CE) 00295

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the units for the give amount.

The RXO-1, RXO-2 and RXO-4 are mandatory unless the prescription is transmitted as free text using RXO-6, then RXO-1, RXO-2, and RXO-4 may be blank and the first subcomponent of RXO-6 must be blank.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity"; i.e., the units may contain the word "per." For example, micrograms per KG (micg/kg) is an acceptable value, which means that the units are micrograms per KG (of body weight). See Chapter 7 for full definition of ISO+ units.

A table of standard units is needed to define standard abbreviations for compound units. Until such a table is agreed on, a user-defined table is needed for each site. If the interpretation of a compound unit requires knowledge of some observation results (such as body weight or height), these results can be sent in the same order message using the optional OBX segments.

4.14.1.5 RXO-5 Requested Dosage Form (CE) 00296

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the manner in which the treatment is aggregated for dispensing, e.g., tablets, capsules suppositories. In some cases, this information is implied by the dispense/give code in *RXO-1-requested give code* or *RXO-10-Requested dispense code*. Required when both *RXO-1-Requested give code* and *RXO-10-Requested dispense code* do not specify the drug/treatment form. Optionally included otherwise.

4.14.1.6 RXO-6 Provider's Pharmacy/Treatment Instructions (CE) 00297

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the ordering provider's instructions to the pharmacy or the non-pharmacy treatment provider (e.g., respiratory therapy). If coded, a user-defined table must be used. If transmitted as a free text field, place a null in the first component and the text in the second, e.g., |^this is a free text treatment instruction|.

If the prescription is transmitted as free text using RXO-6, then RXO-1, RXO-2, and RXO-4 may be blank and the first subcomponent of RXO-6 must be blank. Otherwise, RXO-1, RXO-2 and RXO-4 are mandatory.

4.14.1.7 RXO-7 Provider's Administration Instructions (CE) 00298

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the ordering provider's instructions to the patient or to the provider administering the drug or treatment. If coded, a user-defined table must be used. If transmitted as free text, place a null in the first component and the text in the second, e.g., |^this is a free text administration instruction|.

4.14.1.8 RXO-8 Deliver-to Location (LA1) 00299

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
             <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
             <Floor (IS)> ^ <Address (AD)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Address (AD):  <Street Address (ST)> & <Other Designation (ST)> &
             <City (ST)> & <State or Province (ST)> & <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> &
             <Country (ID)> & <Address Type (ID)> & <Other Geographic Designation (ST)>
```

Definition: The first components, modeled after the PL data type, contain the inpatient or outpatient location to which the pharmacy provider or treatment supplier is to deliver the drug or treatment device (if applicable). The default (null) value is the current census location for the patient. This component has the same form as *PV1-3-assigned patient location*. The last component can be used to specify an address. This could be used to fill mail orders to a patient or provider, or to account for home health care.

4.14.1.9 RXO-9 Allow Substitutions (ID) 00300

Definition: Following are the values:

HL7 Table 0161 - Allow Substitution

Value	Description	Comment
N	Substitutions are NOT authorized. (This is the default - null.)	
G	Allow generic substitutions.	
T	Allow therapeutic substitutions	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.14.1.10 RXO-10 Requested Dispense Code (CE) 00301

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates what is to be/was dispensed; it is analogous to *OBR-4-universal service ID* in function. It may be present in the order or not, depending on the application. If not present, and values are given for *RXO-11-requested dispense amount* and *RXO-12-requested dispense units*, the *RXO-1-requested give code* is assumed. If the requested dispense code does not include the dosage form, then *RXO-5-requested dosage form* is required

Note on request-to-dispense fields:

Sometimes an order will be written in which the total amount of the drug or treatment requested to be dispensed has no direct relationship with the give amounts and schedule. For example, an outpatient pharmacy/treatment order might be *take four tablets a day of <drug name, value>, Q6H (every 6 hours) -- dispense 30 tablets*. An inpatient order might be *NS/D5W (normal saline with 5% dextrose) at 1000cc/hour—dispense 3 1-liter bottles of NSD5W solution*. The request-to-dispense fields support this common style of ordering.

4.14.1.11 RXO-11 Requested Dispense Amount (NM) 00302

Definition: This field specifies the amount to be dispensed. See above note.

4.14.1.12 RXO-12 Requested Dispense Units (CE) 00303

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the units for the dispense amount. This must be in simple units that reflect the actual quantity of the substance to be dispensed. It does not include compound units. See above note.

4.14.1.13 RXO-13 Number of Refills (NM) 00304

Definition: This field defines the number of times the requested dispense amount can be given to the patient, subject to local regulation. Refers to outpatient only.

4.14.1.14 RXO-14 Ordering Provider's DEA Number (XCN) 00305

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
             Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
             (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
             <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
             <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
             Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
             (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
             <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
             (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
             <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
             Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
             Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

```
Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
          Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
          & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
          <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

          Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the provider's controlled substance number, if required, by site. It is defined as conditional because it is required when the substance being requested is a controlled substance (e.g., a narcotic).

4.14.1.15 RXO-15 Pharmacist/Treatment Supplier's Verifier ID (XCN) 00306

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
          Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
          (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
          <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
          <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
          Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
          (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
          <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
          (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
          <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
          Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
          Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
          Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
          & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
          <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

          Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field is the provider ID of the pharmacist/treatment supplier verifier. Use if required by the pharmacy or treatment application or site on orders (or some subgroup of orders), in addition to *ORC-11-verified by*.

Example:

The site requires a "verified by" provider (such as a nurse) and a "verifying pharmacist/treatment supplier" on the order. In this case the first field, *ORC-11-verified by*, is already present; but the second field, *RXO-15-pharmacist/treatment supplier's verifier ID*, is needed.

4.14.1.16 RXO-16 Needs Human Review (ID) 00307

Definition: This field uses *HL7 Table 0136 - Yes/No Indicator*. The values have the following meaning for this field:

Y Yes - Indicates that the pharmacist or non-pharmacist treatment supplier filling the order needs to pay special attention to the text in the *RXO-6-provider's pharmacy/treatment instructions*. A warning is present.

N No - No warning is present. This is the equivalent default (null) value.

An example of the use of this field is given by the following case:

A *smart* Order Entry application knows of a possible drug or treatment interaction on a certain order, but the provider issuing the order wants to override the condition. In this case, the pharmacy or treatment application receiving the order will want to have a staff pharmacist or non-pharmacist treatment supplier review the interaction and contact the ordering physician.

4.14.1.17 RXO-17 Requested Give Per (Time Unit) (ST) 00308

Definition: This field identifies the time unit to use to calculate the rate at which the pharmaceutical is to be administered.

Format:

S<integer>	=	<integer> seconds
M<integer>	=	<integer> minutes
H<integer>	=	<integer> hours
D<integer>	=	<integer> days

W<integer>	=	<integer> weeks
L<integer>	=	<integer> months

Note: This is the same as the format specified for the DURATION component of the quantity/timing field, excluding the "X" specification.

This field is defined as conditional because it is required when the ordered substance is to be administered continuously at a prescribed rate (e.g., certain IVs). For example, if the "give amount/units" are 300 ml and the "give per" time unit is H1, the rate is 300ml/hr and the duration of this dose is 1 hour. Thus the give amount and give per time unit define the duration of the service.

This field is distinct from the "interval" component of the quantity/timing field, but it could be used in conjunction with it, as in *give 300ml of NS per hr for 1 hour, repeat twice a day*.

4.14.1.18 RXO-18 Requested Give Strength (NM) 01121

Definition: Required when RXO-1-requested give code does not specify the strength. Optionally included otherwise. This is the numeric part of the strength, used in combination with RXO-19-requested give strength units.

The need for strength and strength unit fields in addition to the amount and amount units fields included in various RX_ segments requires explanation. Physicians can write a prescription for a drug such as Ampicillin in two ways. One way would be: "Ampicillin 250 mg capsules, 2 capsules four times a day." In this case the give amount would be 2, the give units would be capsules, the strength would be 250 and the strength units would milligrams.

However, the provider could also write the pharmaceutical treatment as "Ampicillin 500 mg four times a day." In this case the give amount would be 500 and the give units would be milligrams. The strength would not be reported in the RXO segment because it is not specified; the drug could be given in two 250 mg caps or one 500 mg cap. But the pharmacist would dispense a specific capsule size and would record the strength in the RXE segment as 250 or 500, depending upon which capsule size was dispensed.

Some coding systems imply the strength, units, route of administration, and manufacturer of substances within a single instructional code. NDC codes, for example, usually imply not only the medical substance, but also the strength, the units, and the form, e.g., 0047-0402-30^Ampicillin 250 MG CAPS^NDC. So all of this information can also be completely specified in *RXO-1-requested give code* and in the analogous CE fields in other pharmacy/treatment segments. In this case, it is not necessary to use the strength and strength units fields to specify this information.

4.14.1.19 RXO-19 Requested Give Strength Units (CE) 01122

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: Required when both *RXO-1-requested give* code and *RXO-10-requested dispense code* do not specify the strength. Optionally included otherwise. This is the unit of the strength, used in combination with *RXO-18-requested give strength*.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity;" i.e., the units may express a quantity per unit of time. For example, micrograms per hour (micg/h) is an acceptable value. These compound units are contained in the ISO+ table. See Chapter 7 for full definition of ISO+ units.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.14.1.20 RXO-20 Indication (CE) 01123

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the condition or problem for which the drug/treatment was prescribed. May repeat if multiple indications are relevant.

4.14.1.21 RXO-21 Requested Give Rate Amount (ST) 01218

Definition: This field contains the rate at which to administer a treatment, e.g., 150 ml/hr (for an IV) or 4 liters/min for nasal oxygen.

4.14.1.22 RXO-22 Requested Give Rate Units (CE) 01219

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units in which *RXO-21-requested give rate amount* is denominated.

4.14.1.23 RXO-23 Total Daily Dose (CQ) 00329

```
Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
             System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
             of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the total daily dose for this particular pharmaceutical as expressed in terms of actual dispense units.

4.14.1.24 RXO-24 Supplementary Code (CE) 01476

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

This field accommodates the identification of any codes that might be associated with the pharmaceutical substance. Common codes include: the Generic Product Identifier (GPI), Generic Code Number_Sequence Number (GCN_SEQNO), National Drug Code (NDC**).**

4.14.1.25 RXO-25 Requested Drug Strength Volume (NM) 01666

Description: This numeric field defines the volume measurement in which the drug strength concentration is contained. For example, Acetaminophen 120 MG/5ML Elixir means that 120 MG of the drug is in a solution with a volume of 5 ML, which would be encoded in RXO-18, RXO-19, RXO-25 and RXO-26 as

```
RXO||||||||||||||||||120|mg^^ISO||||||5|ml^^ISO …<cr>
```

4.14.1.26 RXO-26 Requested Drug Strength Volume Units (CWE) 01667

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Description: This field indicates the volumetric unit associated with RXO-25 Requested Drug Strength Volume. See example in RXO-25.

4.14.1.27 RXO-27 Pharmacy Order Type (ID) 01668

Definition: The Pharmacy Order Type field defines the general category of pharmacy order which may be used to determine the processing path the order will take. Refer to *HL7 Table 0480 Pharmacy Order Types* for valid values.

This field may also be used for grouping of related orders for processing and/or reports. For example, Medication Administration Records (MARs) often group large volume solutions, medications and small volume solutions differently based upon site-specific workflow.

Usage Rule: This field is optional for all Pharmacy transactions. When not populated, a default value of "M" is assumed.

HL7 Table 0480 – Pharmacy Order Types

Value	Description	Comment
M	Medication	Default value. Includes, but is not limited to, tables, capsules, powders, puffs, and other non-injected/non-infused products.
S	IV Large Volume Solutions	Includes, but is not limited to, TPNs, admixtures, solutions and drips.
O	Other solution as medication orders	Includes, but is not limited to, piggybacks and syringes

4.14.1.28 RXO-28 Dispensing Interval (NM) 01669

Definition: This field specifies the minimum number of days that must occur between dispensing events

4.14.2 RXR - Pharmacy/Treatment Route Segment

The Pharmacy/Treatment Route segment contains the alternative combination of route, site, administration device, and administration method that are prescribed as they apply to a particular order. The pharmacy, treatment staff and/or nursing staff has a choice between the routes based on either their professional judgment or administration instructions provided by the physician.

HL7 Attribute Table – RXR – Pharmacy/Treatment Route

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	CE	R		0162	00309	Route
2	250	CWE	O		0163	00310	Administration Site
3	250	CE	O		0164	00311	Administration Device
4	250	CWE	O		0165	00312	Administration Method
5	250	CE	O			01315	Routing Instruction
6	250	CWE	O		0495	01670	Administration Site Modifier

4.14.2.0 RXR field definitions

4.14.2.1 RXR-1 Route (CE) 00309

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the route of administration.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Some current "route codes," such as some of the NDC-derived codes include the site already. In such cases, the entire code can be included in this field as a "locally-defined code" for the CE data type. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0162 - Route Of Administration* for valid values.

User-defined Table 0162 - Route of Administration

Value	Description	Comment
AP	Apply Externally	
B	Buccal	
DT	Dental	
EP	Epidural	
ET	Endotrachial Tube*	used primarily for respiratory therapy and anesthesia delivery
GTT	Gastrostomy Tube	
GU	GU Irrigant	
IMR	Immerse (Soak) Body Part	
IA	Intra-arterial	
IB	Intrabursal	
IC	Intracardiac	
ICV	Intracervical (uterus)	
ID	Intradermal	
IH	Inhalation	
IHA	Intrahepatic Artery	
IM	Intramuscular	
IN	Intranasal	
IO	Intraocular	
IP	Intraperitoneal	
IS	Intrasynovial	
IT	Intrathecal	
IU	Intrauterine	
IV	Intravenous	
MTH	Mouth/Throat	
MM	Mucous Membrane	
NS	Nasal	
NG	Nasogastric	
NP	Nasal Prongs*	used primarily for respiratory therapy and anesthesia delivery
NT	Nasotrachial Tube	
OP	Ophthalmic	
OT	Otic	
OTH	Other/Miscellaneous	
PF	Perfusion	
PO	Oral	
PR	Rectal	
RM	Rebreather Mask*	used primarily for respiratory therapy and anesthesia delivery
SD	Soaked Dressing	
SC	Subcutaneous	
SL	Sublingual	
TP	Topical	
TRA	Tracheostomy*	used primarily for respiratory therapy and anesthesia delivery
TD	Transdermal	
TL	Translingual	

Value	Description	Comment
UR	Urethral	
VG	Vaginal	
VM	Ventimask	
WND	Wound	

4.14.2.2 RXR-2 Administration Site (CWE) 00310

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the site of the administration route. When using a post-coordinated code table in this field, RXR-6 Administration Site may be used to modify the meaning of this field.

Refer to *HL7 Table 0550 – Body Parts* for valid values. For backward compatibility, *HL7 Table 0163 – Body Site* may also be employed. Other appropriate external code sets (e.g., SNOMED) may also be employed.

4.14.2.3 RXR-3 Administration Device (CE) 00311

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the mechanical device used to aid in the administration of the drug or other treatment. Common examples are IV-sets of different types. Refer to *User-defined Table 0164 - Administration device* for valid entries.

User-defined Table 0164 - Administration Device

Value	Description	Comment
AP	Applicator	
BT	Buretrol	
HL	Heparin Lock	
IPPB	IPPB	
IVP	IV Pump	
IVS	IV Soluset	
MI	Metered Inhaler	
NEB	Nebulizer	
PCA	PCA Pump	

4.14.2.4 RXR-4 Administration Method (CWE) 00312

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the specific method requested for the administration of the drug or treatment to the patient. Refer To *User-defined Table 0165 – Administration Method* for valid values.

User-defined Table 0165 - Administration Method

Value	Description	Comment
CH	Chew	
DI	Dissolve	
DU	Dust	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value	Description	Comment
IF	Infiltrate	
IS	Insert	
IR	Irrigate	
IVPB	IV Piggyback	
IVP	IV Push	
NB	Nebulized	
PT	Pain	
PF	Perfuse	
SH	Shampoo	
SO	Soak	
WA	Wash	
WI	Wipe	

4.14.2.5 RXR-5 Routing Instruction (CE) 01315

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field provides instruction on administration routing, especially in cases where more than one route of administration is possible. A typical case would be designating which IV line should be used when more than one IV line is a possible route for injection.

4.14.2.6 RXR-6 Administration Site Modifier (CWE) 01670

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains a modifier which modifies the meaning of RXR-2 Administration Site.

The code table used in this field is dependent upon the code table used in RXR-2 Administration site. If RXR-2 employs *HL7 Table 0550 – Body Parts*, then this field may only be populated with values from *HL7 Table 0495 – Body Parts Modifier*. If RXR-2 employs *HL7 Table 0163 – Body Site*, then RXR-6 should not be populated. In the case of other code sets (e.g., SNOMED) in RXR-2, RXR-6 may only be populated if modifiers are defined within, or related to, that code set.

Condition Rule: This field may only be populated if RXR-2 Administration Site is populated. This field is not required if RXR-2 is populated.

4.14.3 RXC - Pharmacy/Treatment Component Order Segment

If the drug or treatment ordered with the RXO segment is a compound drug OR an IV solution, AND there is not a coded value for *OBR-4-universal service ID*, which specifies the components (base and all additives), then the components (the base and additives) are specified by two or more RXC segments. The policy of the pharmacy or treatment application on substitutions at the RXC level is identical to that for the RXO level.

HL7 Attribute Table – RXC – Pharmacy/Treatment Component Order

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	1	ID	R		0166	00313	RX Component Type
2	250	CE	R			00314	Component Code

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
3	20	NM	R			00315	Component Amount
4	250	CE	R			00316	Component Units
5	20	NM	O			01124	Component Strength
6	250	CE	O			01125	Component Strength Units
7	250	CE	O	Y		01476	Supplementary Code
8	5	NM	O			01671	Component Drug Strength Volume
9	250	CWE	O			01672	Component Drug Strength Volume Units

4.14.3.0 RXC field definitions

4.14.3.1 RXC-1 RX Component Type (ID) 00313

Definition: Following are the values for this field:

HL7 Table 0166 - RX Component Type

Value	Description	Comment
B	Base	
A	Additive	

For the non-IV case, the "B" value may still apply. For example, if a custom dermatologic salve is being prepared, the "B" item might be a standard base ointment into which other components are mixed.

The amount of the "base" specified in the "B" segment(s) is defined to be the quantity into which amounts specified in the "A" components are mixed. Thus the RXC segments as a group define the "recipe" for a particular amount (defined by the base segment(s)). The give amount, as defined in the RXO, does not need to correspond to this base amount. For example, the RXC segments may specify a recipe for a liter of a standard type of saline with 1 gram of a particular antimicrobial, while the give amount (from the RXO) may specify the administration of 2 liters of this IV-solution every 24 hours.

The amount specified in each "A" segment is defined to be the quantity to be added to the amount of the base as specified in its RXC segment.

If any "base" components are present then these should be transmitted first. The first "base" component in the transmission should be considered the "primary base" if such a distinction is necessary. Similarly, the first "additive" in the transmission should be considered the "primary additive" if such a distinction is necessary.

4.14.3.2 RXC-2 Component Code (CE) 00314

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
           <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
           Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is equivalent to *OBR-4-universal service ID*. It defines the base or component in the same manner as the give and dispense codes. As with the give and dispense codes, it may contain text only, code only, text + code, or text + code + units (implied or explicit). As with the give and dispense codes, if *RXC-4-component units* is present, this overrides the units implied by the code. If only text is present, the pharmacy or treatment application must include a manual review or reentering of the component drug or treatment.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.14.3.3 RXC-3 Component Amount (NM) 00315

Definition: This field identifies the amount of this component to be added to the specified amount of the base.

4.14.3.4 RXC-4 Component Units (CE) 00316

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the units for the component amount. If present, this overrides the units implied by *RXC-2-component code*. This must be in simple units that reflect the actual quantity of the component being added. It does not include compound units.

4.14.3.5 RXC-5 Component Strength (NM) 01124

Definition: Use when *RXC-2-component code* does not specify the strength. This is the numeric part of the strength, used in combination with *RXC-6-component strength units.*

4.14.3.6 RXC-6 Component Strength Units (CE) 01125

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: Use when *RXC-2-component code* does not specify the strength. This is the unit of the strength, used in combination with *RXC-5-component strength*.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity;" i.e., the units may express a quantity per unit of time. For example, micrograms per hour (micg/h) is an acceptable value. These compound units are contained in the ISO+ table. See Chapter 7 for full definition of ISO+ units.

4.14.3.7 RXC-7 Supplementary Code (CE) 01476

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

This field accommodates the identification of any codes that might be associated with the pharmaceutical or other treatment substance. Common codes include: the Generic Product Identifier (GPI), Generic Code Number_Sequence Number (GCN_SEQNO), National Drug Code (NDC**).**

4.14.3.8 RXC-8 Component Drug Strength Volume (NM) 01671

Description: This numeric field defines the volume measurement in which the drug strength concentration is contained. For example, Acetaminophen 120 MG/5ML Elixir means that 120 MG of the drug is in a solution with a volume of 5 , which would be encoded in RXC-5, RXC-6, RXC-8 and RXC-9 as

```
RXC||||120|mg^^ISO||5|ml^^ISO …<cr>
```

4.14.3.9 RXC-9 Component Drug Strength Volume Units (CWE) 01672

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Description: This field indicates the volumetric unit associated with RXC-8 Component Drug Strength Volume. See example in RXC-8.

4.14.4 RXE - Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Segment

The RXE segment details the pharmacy or treatment application's encoding of the order. It also contains several pharmacy-specific order status fields, such as *RXE-16-number of refills remaining, RXE-17-number of refills/doses dispensed, RXE-18-D/T of most recent refill or dose dispensed*, and *RXE-19-total daily dose*.

Note that *ORC-7-quantity/timing* has a different meaning from *RXE-1-quantity/timing* and *RXG-3-quantity/timing*. The pharmacy or treatment department has the "authority" (and/or necessity) to schedule dispense/give events. Hence, the pharmacy or treatment department has the responsibility to encode this scheduling information in *RXE-1-quantity/timing* and *RXG-3-quantity/timing*. *ORC-7-quantity/timing* does not change: it always specifies the requested give/dispense schedule of the original order.

HL7 Attribute Table – RXE – Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	200	TQ	B			00221	Quantity/Timing
2	250	CE	R		0292 / 0479	00317	Give Code
3	20	NM	R			00318	Give Amount - Minimum
4	20	NM	O			00319	Give Amount - Maximum
5	250	CE	R			00320	Give Units
6	250	CE	O			00321	Give Dosage Form
7	250	CE	O	Y		00298	Provider's Administration Instructions
8	200	LA1	B			00299	Deliver-to Location
9	1	ID	O		0167	00322	Substitution Status
10	20	NM	C			00323	Dispense Amount
11	250	CE	C			00324	Dispense Units
12	3	NM	O			00304	Number of Refills
13	250	XCN	C	Y		00305	Ordering Provider's DEA Number
14	250	XCN	O	Y		00306	Pharmacist/Treatment Supplier's Verifier ID
15	20	ST	C			00325	Prescription Number
16	20	NM	C			00326	Number of Refills Remaining
17	20	NM	C			00327	Number of Refills/Doses Dispensed
18	26	TS	C			00328	D/T of Most Recent Refill or Dose Dispensed
19	10	CQ	C			00329	Total Daily Dose
20	1	ID	O		0136	00307	Needs Human Review
21	250	CE	O	Y		00330	Pharmacy/Treatment Supplier's Special Dispensing Instructions
22	20	ST	C			00331	Give Per (Time Unit)
23	6	ST	O			00332	Give Rate Amount
24	250	CE	O			00333	Give Rate Units
25	20	NM	O			01126	Give Strength
26	250	CE	O			01127	Give Strength Units
27	250	CE	O	Y		01128	Give Indication

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
28	20	NM	O			01220	Dispense Package Size
29	250	CE	O			01221	Dispense Package Size Unit
30	2	ID	O		0321	01222	Dispense Package Method
31	250	CE	O	Y		01476	Supplementary Code
32	26	TS	O			01673	Original Order Date/Time
33	5	NM	O			01674	Give Drug Strength Volume
34	250	CWE	O			01675	Give Drug Strength Volume Units
35	60	CWE	O		0477	01676	Controlled Substance Schedule
36	1	ID	O		0478	01677	Formulary Status
37	60	CWE	O	Y		01678	Pharmaceutical Substance Alternative
38	250	CWE	O			01679	Pharmacy of Most Recent Fill
39	250	NM	O			01680	Initial Dispense Amount
40	250	CWE	O			01681	Dispensing Pharmacy
41	250	XAD	O			01682	Dispensing Pharmacy Address
42	80	PL	O			01683	Deliver-to Patient Location
43	250	XAD	O			01684	Deliver-to Address
44	1	ID	O		0480	01685	Pharmacy Order Type

4.14.4.0 RXE field definitions

4.14.4.1 RXE-1 Quantity/Timing (TQ) 00221

Components: <Quantity (CQ)> ^ <Interval (RI)> ^ <Duration (ST)> ^ <Start Date/Time (TS)> ^ <End Date/Time (TS)> ^ <Priority (ST)> ^ <Condition (ST)> ^ <Text (TX)> ^ <Conjunction (ID)> ^ <Order Sequencing (OSD)> ^ <Occurrence Duration (CE)> ^ <Total Occurrences (NM)>

Subcomponents for Quantity (CQ): <Quantity (NM)> & <Units (CE)>

Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Interval (RI): <Repeat Pattern (IS)> & <Explicit Time Interval (ST)>

Subcomponents for Start Date/Time (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for End Date/Time (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Order Sequencing (OSD): <Sequence/Results Flag (ID)> & <Placer Order Number: Entity Identifier (ST)> & <Placer Order Number: Namespace ID (IS)> & <Filler Order Number: Entity Identifier (ST)> & <Filler Order Number: Namespace ID (IS)> & <Sequence Condition Value (ST)> & <Maximum Number of Repeats (NM)> & <Placer Order Number: Universal ID (ST)> & <Placer Order Number: Universal ID Type (ID)> & <Filler Order Number: Universal ID (ST)> & <Filler Order Number: Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Occurrence Duration (CE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Definition: ***This field is retained for backward compatibility only.*** The reader is referred to the TQ1 and TQ2 segments described in sections 4.5.4 and 4.5.5 respectively.

See Section *4.14.4 "RXE - Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order Segment*," for necessary modification for this field's definition to cover interorder dependencies needed by pharmacy/treatment orders. This field is used by the pharmacy or non-pharmacy treatment supplier to express the fully-coded version of the drug or treatment timing. It may differ from *ORC-7-quantity/timing*, which contains the requested quantity/timing of the original order.

4.14.4.2 RXE-2 Give Code (CE) 00317

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the medical substance or treatment that has been ordered to be given to the patient, as encoded by the pharmacy or treatment supplier; it is equivalent to *OBR-4-universal service ID* in function. In the RXE segment, this give code must be fully encoded. The dispense fields, which define the units and amount of what is to be issued to the patient (see *RXE-10-dispense amount* and *RXE-11-dispense units* below), do not necessarily correlate with the instructions of what amount is to be "given" or administered with each dose, and may or may not be specified with the order. For example, the "give" part of the order may convey the field-representation of *give 250 mg of Ampicillin*, while the request to dispense part of the order may convey *issue 30 tablets of generic equivalent for this outpatient prescription*.

The coding system used is conditional on both the nature of the medical substance or treatment ordered and site-specific implementation considerations. For vaccines, *HL7 Table 0292 – Vaccines Administered* is the preferred coding system. For non-vaccine products, the coding system may be a local implementation of *User-defined Table 0479 – Pharmaceutical Substances* or an external coding system. Examples of external coding systems include, but are not limited to, National Drug Codes (NDC), Medispan Generic Product Identifier (MGPI), Drug Descriptor Identifier (DDID), and other drug codes listed in HL7 Table 0396 – Coding Systems. The following examples illustrate some code tables other than User-defined Table 0479:

NDC:	0006915404^Norvasc 10mg Tabs^NDC
DDID:	015189^Norvasc 10mg Tabs^DDID
CVX (HL70292):	30^HBIG^CVX

User-defined Table 0479 – Pharmaceutical Substances

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

4.14.4.3 RXE-3 Give Amount - Minimum (NM) 00318

Definition: This field contains the ordered amount as encoded by the pharmacy or treatment supplier. In a variable dose order, this is the minimum ordered amount. In a nonvarying dose order, this is the exact amount of the order.

Note: This field is not a duplication of the first component of the quantity/timing field, since in non-pharmacy/treatment orders, that component can be used to specify multiples of an ordered amount.

Another way to say this is that, for pharmacy/treatment orders, the quantity component of the quantity/timing field refers to what is to be given out at each service interval; thus, in terms of the RX order, that first component always defaults to 1. Hence, in the actual execution of the order, the value of 1 in the first

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

component of the quantity/timing field always refers to one administration of the amount specified in this field (the requested Give Amount field).

4.14.4.4 RXE-4 Give Amount - Maximum (NM) 00319

Definition: In a variable dose order, this is the maximum ordered amount. In a nonvarying dose, this field is not used.

4.14.4.5 RXE-5 Give Units (CE) 00320

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units for the give amount as encoded by the pharmacy or treatment (e.g., respiratory therapy) application.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity"; i.e., the units may contain the word "per." For example, micrograms per KG (micg/kg) is an acceptable value, which means that the units are micrograms per KG (of body weight).

A table of standard units that contains compound units is needed. Until such a table is agreed on, a user-defined table is needed for each site.

4.14.4.6 RXE-6 Give Dosage Form (CE) 00321

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: The dosage form indicates the manner in which the medication or treatment is aggregated for dispensing, e.g., tablets, capsules, suppositories. In some cases, this information is implied by the give code *in RXE-2-Give Code*. Use the *RXE-6-Give Dosage Form* when the give code does not specify the dosage form.

4.14.4.7 RXE-7 Provider's Administration Instructions (CE) 00298

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the ordering provider's instructions to the patient or the provider administering the drug or treatment. If coded, a user-defined table must be used; if free text (describing a custom IV, mixture, or salve, for example), place the text in the second component, e.g., `|^this is a free text administration instruction|`.

4.14.4.8 RXE-8 Deliver-to Location (LA1) 00299

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
             <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
             <Floor (IS)> ^ <Address (AD)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Address (AD):  <Street Address (ST)> & <Other Designation (ST)> &
             <City (ST)> & <State or Province (ST)> & <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> &
             <Country (ID)> & <Address Type (ID)> & <Other Geographic Designation (ST)>
```

Definition: This field is retained for backward compatibility only. The reader is referred to RXE:40, RXE-41, RXE-42 and RXE-43. The first component contains the inpatient or outpatient location to which the pharmacy or treatment supplier is to deliver the drug or treatment (if applicable). The default (null) value is the current census location for the patient. Site-specific table. The first eight components have the same form as the first eight components of *PV1-3-Assigned Patient Location.* The final eight components replace the ninth component of *PV1-3-Assigned Patient location* and represent the full address specification.

4.14.4.9 RXE-9 Substitution Status (ID) 00322

Definition: Refer to *HL7 Table 0167 - Substitution Status* for valid values. If a substitution has been made, and a record of the original requested give code (*RXO-1-requested give code*) is needed, the optional RXO segment can be included in the RDE message.

HL7 Table 0167 - Substitution Status

Value	Description	Comment
N	No substitute was dispensed. This is equivalent to the default (null) value.	
G	A generic substitution was dispensed.	
T	A therapeutic substitution was dispensed.	
0	No product selection indicated	
1	Substitution not allowed by prescriber	
2	Substitution allowed - patient requested product dispensed	
3	Substitution allowed - pharmacist selected product dispensed	
4	Substitution allowed - generic drug not in stock	
5	Substitution allowed - brand drug dispensed as a generic	
7	Substitution not allowed - brand drug mandated by law	
8	Substitution allowed - generic drug not available in marketplace	

4.14.4.10 RXE-10 Dispense Amount (NM) 00323

Definition: This field contains the amount to be dispensed as encoded by the pharmacy or treatment supplier.

4.14.4.11 RXE-11 Dispense Units (CE) 00324

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units for the dispense amount as encoded by the pharmacy or treatment supplier. This field is required if the units are not implied by the actual dispense code. This must be in simple units that reflect the actual quantity of the substance dispensed. It does not include compound units.

4.14.4.12 RXE-12 Number of Refills (NM) 00304

Definition: This field contains the total original number of refills. Outpatient only.

4.14.4.13 RXE-13 Ordering Provider's DEA Number (XCN) 00305

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
             Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
             (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
             <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
             <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
             Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
             (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
             <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
             (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
             <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
          Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
          Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
          Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
          & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
          <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

          Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field is defined as conditional because it is required when the substance requested is a controlled substance (e.g., a narcotic).

4.14.4.14 RXE-14 Pharmacist/Treatment Supplier's Verifier ID (XCN) 00306

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
          Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
          (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
          <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
          <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
          Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
          (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
          <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
          (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
          <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
          Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
          Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

```
Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
          Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
          & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
          <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

          Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the provider ID of Pharmacist/treatment supplier's verifier. Use if required by the pharmacy or treatment application or site on orders (or some subgroup of orders).

4.14.4.15 RXE-15 Prescription Number (ST) 00325

Definition: This field contains the prescription number as assigned by the pharmacy or treatment application. Equivalent in uniqueness to the pharmacy/treatment filler order number. At some sites, this may be the pharmacy or treatment system (internal) sequential form. At other sites, this may be an external form. This is a required field in RXE when used in pharmacy/treatment messages, but it is not required when used in product experience messages (see Chapter 7).

4.14.4.16 RXE-16 Number of Refills Remaining (NM) 00326

Definition: Number of refills remaining. This field is conditional because it is required when a prescription is dispensed to an outpatient. It is not relevant to inpatient treatment orders.

4.14.4.17 RXE-17 Number of Refills/Doses Dispensed (NM) 00327

Definition: Number of refills remaining. This field is conditional because it is required when a prescription is dispensed to an outpatient. It is not relevant to inpatient treatment orders.

4.14.4.18 RXE-18 D/T of Most Recent Refill or Dose Dispensed (TS) 00328

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: Date/time of the most recent refill or dose dispensed.

4.14.4.19 RXE-19 Total Daily Dose (CQ) 00329

```
Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
          System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
          of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Definition: This field contains the total daily dose for this particular pharmaceutical as expressed in terms of actual dispense units.

4.14.4.20 RXE-20 Needs Human Review (ID) 00307

Definition: This field uses *HL7 Table 0136 - Yes/No Indicator*. The values have the following meaning for this field:

Y Yes - Indicates that a warning is present. The application receiving the encoded order needs to warn the person administering the drug or treatment to pay attention to the text in *RXE-21-pharmacy/treatment special dispensing instructions*.

N No - Indicates no warning is present. This is the equivalent default (null) value.

4.14.4.21 RXE-21 Pharmacy/Treatment Supplier's Special Dispensing Instructions (CE) 00330

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the pharmacy or treatment supplier's provider-generated special instructions to the provider dispensing/administering the order.

4.14.4.22 RXE-22 Give Per (Time Unit) (ST) 00331

Definition: This field contains the time unit to use to calculate the rate at which the pharmaceutical is to be administered.

Format:

S<integer>	=	<integer> seconds
M<integer>	=	<integer> minutes
H<integer>	=	<integer> hours
D<integer>	=	<integer> days
W<integer>	=	<integer> weeks
L<integer>	=	<integer> months
T<integer>	=	at the interval and amount stated until a total of <integer> "DOSAGE" is accumulated. Units would be assumed to be the same as in the QUANTITY field.
INDEF	=	do indefinitely - also the default

This is the same as the format specified for the DURATION component of the quantity/timing field, excluding the "X" specification.

This field is defined as conditional because it is required when the ordered substance is to be administered continuously at a prescribed rate (e.g., certain IVs). For example, if the "give amount/units" were 300 ml and the "give per" time unit were H1 (equivalent to one hour), the rate is 300ml/hr.

4.14.4.23 RXE-23 Give Rate Amount (ST) 00332

Definition: This field contains the rate at which the substance should be administered.

4.14.4.24 RXE-24 Give Rate Units (CE) 00333

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units for *RXE-23-give rate amount*. May be composite. The ratio of the *RXE-23-give rate amount* and *RXE-24-give rate units* defines the actual rate of administration. Thus, if *RXE-23-give rate amount* = 100 and *RXE-24-give rate units* = ml/hr, the requested rate of administration is 100 ml/hr. (See ISO+ Figure 7-9 in Chapter 7 for possible compound units codes.)

4.14.4.25 RXE-25 Give Strength (NM) 01126

Definition: Use when *RXE-2-give code* does not specify the strength. This is the numeric part of the strength, used in combination with *RXE-26-give strength units*.

4.14.4.26 RXE-26 Give Strength Units (CE) 01127

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: Use when *RXE-2-Give Code* does not specify the strength. This is the unit of the strength, used in combination with *RXE-25-Give Strength*.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity"; i.e., the units may express a quantity per unit of time. For example, micrograms per hour (micg/h) is an acceptable value. These compound units are contained in the ISO+ table. See Chapter 7 for full definition of ISO+ units.

4.14.4.27 RXE-27 Give Indication (CE) 01128

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the condition or problem for which the drug/treatment was prescribed. May repeat if multiple indications are relevant.

4.14.4.28 RXE-28 Dispense Package Size (NM) 01220

Definition: This field contains the size of package to be dispensed. Units are transmitted in *RXE-29-dispense package size unit*.

4.14.4.29 RXE-29 Dispense Package Size Unit (CE) 01221

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units in which *RXE-28-dispense package size* is denominated.

4.14.4.30 RXE-30 Dispense Package Method (ID) 01222

Definition: This field contains the method by which treatment is dispensed. Refer To *HL7 Table 0321 - Dispense Method* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0321 - Dispense Method

Value	Description	Comment
TR	Traditional	
UD	Unit Dose	
F	Floor Stock	
AD	Automatic Dispensing	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.14.4.31 RXE-31 Supplementary Code (CE) 01476

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field accommodates the identification of any codes that might be associated with the pharmaceutical substance. Common codes include: the Generic Product Identifier (GPI), Generic Code Number_Sequence Number (GCN_SEQNO), National Drug Code (NDC**).**

4.14.4.32 RXE-32 Original Order Date/Time (TS) 01673

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the date/time of the original order (ORC-9) when a refill authorization is being requested. This was represented in the ORC-9 of the original order transaction.

4.14.4.33 RXE-33 Give Drug Strength Volume (NM) 01674

Description: This numeric field defines the volume measurement in which the drug strength concentration is contained. For example, Acetaminophen 120 MG/5ML Elixir means that 120 MG of the drug is in a solution with a volume of 5 ML, which would be encoded in RXE-25, RXE-26, RXE-33 and RXE-34 as

```
RXE||||||||||||||||||||||||120|mg^^ISO|||||||5|ml^^ISO …<cr>
```

4.14.4.34 RXE-34 Give Drug Strength Volume Units (CWE) 01675

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Description: This field indicates the volumetric unit associated with RXE-33 Give Drug Strength Volume. See example in RXE-33.

4.14.4.35 RXE-35 Controlled Substance Schedule (CWE) 01676

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the class of the drug or other substance if its usage is controlled by legislation. In the USA, such legislation includes the federal Controlled Substance Act (CSA) or a State Uniform Controlled Substance Act. Refer to *user-defined table 0477 – Controlled Substance Schedule* for valid values for USA usage. Other countries should create their own versions of this table.

Because some jurisdictions may extend the list of drugs in a particular class and may create an additional schedule, table 0477 is user-defined.

User-defined Table 0477 – Controlled Substance Schedule*

Value	Description	Comment
I	Schedule I	Includes drugs that have a high potential for abuse, no currently accepted medical use in the United States and a lack of accepted safety for use under medical supervision.
II	Schedule II	Includes drugs having currently accepted medical use in the United States and a high abuse

Value	Description	Comment
		potential, with severe psychological or physical dependence liability.
III	Schedule III	Includes drugs having an abuse potential less than that of drugs listed in Schedules I and II. All CS III drugs have a currently accepted medical use in the United States.
IV	Schedule IV	Includes drugs having a lesser potential for abuse than those listed in Schedule III. CS IV drugs have a currently accepted medical use in the United States.
V	Schedule V	Includes drugs having low abuse potential and limited physical or psychological dependence relative to those listed in IV and have an accepted medical use in the United States.
VI	Schedule VI	State defined

*Pharmacy Law Digest July 1988

4.14.4.36 RXE-36 Formulary Status (ID) 01677

Definition: This field specifies whether or not the pharmaceutical substance is part of the local formulary. Refer to *HL7 table 0478 - Formulary Status* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0478 – Formulary Status

Value	Description	Comment
Y	Pharmaceutical substance is in the formulary	
N	Pharmaceutical substance is NOT in the formulary	
R	Pharmaceutical substance is in the formulary, but restrictions apply	
G	Pharmaceutical substance is in the formulary, but guidelines apply	

4.14.4.37 RXE-37 Pharmaceutical Substance Alternative (CWE) 01678

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field specifies a pharmaceutical substance that is in the formulary that could be prescribed in lieu of the substance being prescribed. In the case where the specified medication is non-formulary this field would contain therapeutic alternatives that are on the formulary.

4.14.4.38 RXE-38 Pharmacy of Most Recent Fill (CWE) 01679

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the pharmacy that last filled the prescription.

4.14.4.39 RXE-39 Initial Dispense Amount (NM) 01680

Definition: This field specifies the quantity dispensed on the original fill (first fill) of a prescription when that amount is not the same as the quantity to be used in refills. One use case is when a new medication is being prescribed and the prescriber wants to determine if the patient will tolerate the medication. The prescriber indicates that the medication should be filled for an initial amount of 30 tablets and, if tolerated,

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

refilled using a quantity of 100 tablets. In this case, RXE-39 would contain 30 and RXE-10 would contain 100.

If this field is not populated, then the initial dispense amount is the same as RXE-10.

The units are identified in RXE-11.

4.14.4.40 RXE-40 Dispensing Pharmacy (CWE) 01681

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the pharmacy that will dispense the prescription.

4.14.4.41 RXE-41 Dispensing Pharmacy Address (XAD) 01682

```
Components:  <Street Address (SAD)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City (ST)> ^ <State
             or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country (ID)> ^ <Address
             Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation (ST)> ^ <County/Parish Code
             (IS)> ^ <Census Tract (IS)> ^ <Address Representation Code (ID)> ^
             <DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^
             <Expiration Date (TS)>

Subcomponents for Street Address (SAD):  <Street or Mailing Address (ST)> & <Street
             Name (ST)> & <Dwelling Number (ST)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time
             (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
             (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
             Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the address of the dispensing facility.

4.14.4.42 RXE-42 Deliver-to patient location (PL) 01683

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
             <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Person Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
             <Floor (IS)> ^ <Location Description (ST)> ^ <Comprehensive Location
             Identifier (EI)> ^ <Assigning Authority for Location (HD)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Comprehensive Location Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
             <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority for Location (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> &
             <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the location of the patient to whom the pharmaceutical substance is to be delivered.

4.14.4.43 RXE-43 Deliver-to Address (XAD) 01684

```
Components:  <Street Address (SAD)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City (ST)> ^ <State
             or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country (ID)> ^ <Address
             Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation (ST)> ^ <County/Parish Code
             (IS)> ^ <Census Tract (IS)> ^ <Address Representation Code (ID)> ^
             <DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^
             <Expiration Date (TS)>

Subcomponents for Street Address (SAD):  <Street or Mailing Address (ST)> & <Street
             Name (ST)> & <Dwelling Number (ST)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time
             (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
             (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
             Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the address, either mailing or physical, to which the prescription should be mailed or delivered.

4.14.4.44 RXE-44 Pharmacy Order Type (ID) 01685

Definition: The Pharmacy Order Type field defines the general category of pharmacy order which may be used to determine the processing path the order will take. Refer to *HL7 Table 0480 Pharmacy Order Types* for valid values.

This field may also be used for grouping of related orders for processing and/or reports. For example, Medication Administration Records (MARs) often group large volume solutions, medications and small volume solutions differently based upon site-specific workflow.

Usage Rule: This field is optional for all Pharmacy transactions. When not populated, a default value of "M" is assumed.

4.14.5 RXD - Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense Segment

HL7 Attribute Table – RXD – Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	NM	R			00334	Dispense Sub-ID Counter
2	250	CE	R		0292	00335	Dispense/Give Code
3	26	TS	R			00336	Date/Time Dispensed
4	20	NM	R			00337	Actual Dispense Amount
5	250	CE	C			00338	Actual Dispense Units
6	250	CE	O			00339	Actual Dosage Form
7	20	ST	R			00325	Prescription Number
8	20	NM	C			00326	Number of Refills Remaining
9	200	ST	O	Y		00340	Dispense Notes

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
10	200	XCN	O	Y		00341	Dispensing Provider
11	1	ID	O		0167	00322	Substitution Status
12	10	CQ	O			00329	Total Daily Dose
13	200	LA2	C			01303	Dispense-to Location
14	1	ID	O		0136	00307	Needs Human Review
15	250	CE	O	Y		00330	Pharmacy/Treatment Supplier's Special Dispensing Instructions
16	20	NM	O			01132	Actual Strength
17	250	CE	O			01133	Actual Strength Unit
18	20	ST	O	Y		01129	Substance Lot Number
19	26	TS	O	Y		01130	Substance Expiration Date
20	250	CE	O	Y	0227	01131	Substance Manufacturer Name
21	250	CE	O	Y		01123	Indication
22	20	NM	O			01220	Dispense Package Size
23	250	CE	O			01221	Dispense Package Size Unit
24	2	ID	O		0321	01222	Dispense Package Method
25	250	CE	O	Y		01476	Supplementary Code
26	250	CE	O			01477	Initiating Location
27	250	CE	O			01478	Packaging/Assembly Location
28	5	NM	O			01686	Actual Drug Strength Volume
29	250	CWE	O			01687	Actual Drug Strength Volume Units
30	180	CWE	O			01688	Dispense to Pharmacy
31	106	XAD	O			01689	Dispense to Pharmacy Address
32	1	ID	O		0480	01690	Pharmacy Order Type
33	250	CWE	O		0484	01691	Dispense Type

4.14.5.0 RXD field definitions

4.14.5.1 RXD-1 Dispense sub-ID counter (NM) 00334

Definition: This field starts with 1 the first time that medication/treatment is delivered/dispensed for this order. Increments by one with each additional issuance.

4.14.5.2 RXD-2 Dispense/Give Code (CE) 00335

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the medical substance or treatment ordered to be given to the patient; it is equivalent to *OBR-4-Universal Service ID*. See the RXE segment for a complete definition of the *RXE-2-give code*. If the substance dispensed is a vaccine, CVX codes may be used to code this field (see *HL7 Table 0292 - Vaccines Administered*).

Note: The contents of *RXD-2-dispense/give code* should be compatible with the comparable field in the RXE (*RXE-2-give code*). The RDS message refers ONLY to the dispensing of the drug or treatment by the pharmacy or treatment supplier.

4.14.5.3 RXD-3 Date/Time Dispensed (TS) 00336

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates when the pharmaceutical/treatment is dispensed from the pharmacy or treatment supplier. Use the time stamp format.

4.14.5.4 RXD-4 Actual Dispense Amount (NM) 00337

Definition: This field indicates the amount dispensed.

4.14.5.5 RXD-5 Actual Dispense Units (CE) 00338

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the units dispensed. Site-defined table. This field is required if the units are not implied by the actual dispense code. If present, it overrides units implied by the actual dispense code. This must be in simple units that reflect the actual quantity of the substance dispensed. It does not include compound units.

4.14.5.6 RXD-6 Actual Dosage Form (CE) 00339

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: The dosage form indicates the manner in which the medication/treatment is aggregated for dispensing, e.g., tablets, capsules, suppositories. In some cases, this information is implied by the dispense/give code in *RXD-2-dispense/give code.* Use this field when the give code and the dispense code do not specify the dosage form.

4.14.5.7 RXD-7 Prescription Number (ST) 00325

Definition: This field is equivalent in uniqueness to the pharmacy/treatment supplier filler order number. At some sites, this may be the pharmacy/treatment supplier (internal) sequential form. At other sites, this may be an external number.

4.14.5.8 RXD-8 Number of Refills Remaining (NM) 00326

Definition: This field is conditional because it is required when a prescription is dispensed to an outpatient. It is not relevant to inpatient treatment orders.

4.14.5.9 RXD-9 Dispense Notes (ST) 00340

Definition: This field contains free text notes to the person dispensing the medication/treatment (may include the ordering provider's original notes, as well as any notes from the formulary or the pharmacy or treatment supplier). This may contain free text describing a custom IV, mixture, or salve for example.

4.14.5.10 RXD-10 Dispensing Provider (XCN) 00341

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
             Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
             (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
            <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
            <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
            Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
            (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
            <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
            (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
            <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

      Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
            Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
            Partner/Spouse (ST)>

      Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
            & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
            & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
            Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
            & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

      Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
            <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

            Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

      Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
            (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
            Precision (ID)>

      Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
            <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
            Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
            Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
            Text (ST)>

      Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
            (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
            <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
            System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
            <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the provider ID of the person dispensing the pharmaceutical.

4.14.5.11 RXD-11 Substitution Status (ID) 00322

Definition: Refer to *HL7 Table 0167 - Substitution Status* for suggested values.

4.14.5.12 RXD-12 Total Daily Dose (CQ) 00329

```
      Components:  <Quantity (NM)> ^ <Units (CE)>

      Subcomponents for Units (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding
            System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name
            of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the total daily dose being dispensed as expressed in terms of the actual dispense units.

Note: The next two fields are equivalent to the corresponding fields of the RXE segment. They are included (optionally) in the RXD so that it may "stand alone" as a dispense result instruction segment.

4.14.5.13 RXD-13 Dispense-to Location (LA2) 01303

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
             <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
             <Floor (IS)> ^ <Street Address (ST)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City
             (ST)> ^ <State or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country
             (ID)> ^ <Address Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation  (ST)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: The first component (which is of PL data type with the component delimiters demoted to subcomponents) contains the inpatient or outpatient location where the drug or treatment was dispensed (if applicable). The default (null) value is the current census location for the patient. Site-specific table. The first eight components have the same form as the first eight components of *PV1-3-Assigned Patient Location.* The final eight components replace the ninth component of *PV1-3-Assigned Patient Location* and represent the full address specification.

4.14.5.14 RXD-14 Needs Human Review (ID) 00307

Definition: Refer to *HL7 table 0136 - Yes/no indicator* for valid values. The values have the following meaning for this field:

Y Yes - Indicates that a warning is present. The application receiving the dispense order needs to warn the person dispensing/administering the drug or treatment to pay attention to the text in *RXD-15-pharmacy/treatment supplier's special dispensing instructions.*

N No - Indicates no warning is present. This is the equivalent default (null) value.

4.14.5.15 RXD-15 Pharmacy/Treatment Supplier's Special Dispensing Instructions (CE) 00330

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains pharmacy or treatment supplier-generated special instructions to the provider dispensing/administering the order.

4.14.5.16 RXD-16 Actual Strength (NM) 01132

Definition: Use when *RXD-2-Dispense/Give Code* does not specify the strength. This is the numeric part of the strength, of a single dosage unit of the dispensed product, used in combination with *RXD-17-actual strength unit.*

4.14.5.17 RXD-17 Actual Strength Unit (CE) 01133

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: Use when *RXD-2-Dispense/Give Code* does not specify the strength. This is the unit of the strength, of a single dosage unit of the dispensed product, used in combination with *RXD-16-actual strength.*

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity;" i.e., the units may express a quantity per unit of time. For example, micrograms per hour (micg/h) is an acceptable value. These compound units are contained in the ISO+ table. See Chapter 7 for full definition of ISO+ units.

4.14.5.18 RXD-18 Substance Lot Number (ST) 01129

Definition: This field contains the lot number of the medical substance administered.

Note: The lot number is the number printed on the label attached to the container holding the substance and on the packaging which houses the container. If the substance is a vaccine, for example, and a diluent is required, a lot number may appear on the vial containing the diluent; however, any such identifier associated with a diluent is not the identifier of interest. The substance lot number should be reported, not that of the diluent.

4.14.5.19 RXD-19 Substance Expiration Date (TS) 01130

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the expiration date of the medical substance administered.

Note: Vaccine expiration date does not always have a "day" component; therefore, such a date may be transmitted as YYYYMM^L.

4.14.5.20 RXD-20 Substance Manufacturer Name (CE) 01131

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the manufacturer of the medical substance administered when it is a manufactured substance.

Note: For vaccines, code system MVX may be used to code this field. See Section *4.17.1*. This field may be used if the manufacturer of the substance is not identified by the code used in RXA-5-Administered code.

4.14.5.21 RXD-21 Indication (CE) 01123

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier of the condition or problem for which the drug/treatment was prescribed. May repeat if multiple indications are relevant.

4.14.5.22 RXD-22 Dispense Package Size (NM) 01220

Definition: This field contains the size of package to be dispensed. Units are transmitted *in RXD-23-dispense package size unit.*

4.14.5.23 RXD-23 Dispense Package Size Unit (CE) 01221

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units in which *RXE-28-dispense package size* is denominated. The advertised number of units in the manufacturers package i.e., the package as it comes from the supplier

4.14.5.24 RXD-24 Dispense Package Method (ID) 01222

Definition: This field contains the method by which treatment is dispensed. Refer To *HL7 Table 0321 - Dispense Method* for valid values.

4.14.5.25 RXD-25 Supplementary code (CE) 01476

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field accommodates the identification of any codes that might be associated with the pharmaceutical substance. Common codes include: the Generic Product Identifier (GPI), Generic Code Number_Sequence Number (GCN_SEQNO), National Drug Code (NDC**).**

4.14.5.26 RXD-26 Initiating Location (CE) 01477

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the pharmacy or other treatment dispensing service (e.g., respiratory) that received the initial request.

Example: Pharmacy A (the Intake/Receiving) receives a phone call from the patient requesting a medication refill, but stipulates that the prescription will be picked up in pharmacy B. In accordance with the business process the prescription will be packaged/assembled in Pharmacy C.

4.14.5.27 RXD-27 Packaging/Assembly Location (CE) 01478

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the pharmacy which packaged/assembled request.

4.14.5.28 RXD-28 Actual Drug Strength Volume (NM) 01686

Description: This numeric field defines the volume measurement in which the drug strength concentration is contained. For example, Acetaminophen 120 MG/5ML Elixir means that 120 MG of the drug is in a solution with a volume of 5 ML , which would be encoded in RXD-16, RXD-17, RXD-28 and RXD-29 as

```
RXD||||||||||||||||120|mg^^ISO||||||||||5|ml^^ISO …<cr>
```

4.14.5.29 RXD-29 Actual Drug Strength Volume Units (CWE) 01687

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Description: This field indicates the volumetric unit associated with RXD-28 Actual Drug Strength Volume. See example in RXD-28.

4.14.5.30 RXD-30 Dispense to Pharmacy (CWE) 01688

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Definition: This field specifies the pharmacy that will dispense the prescription.

4.14.5.31 RXD-31 Dispense to Pharmacy Address (XAD) 01689

```
Components:  <Street Address (SAD)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City (ST)> ^ <State
             or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country (ID)> ^ <Address
             Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation (ST)> ^ <County/Parish Code
             (IS)> ^ <Census Tract (IS)> ^ <Address Representation Code (ID)> ^
             <DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^
             <Expiration Date (TS)>

Subcomponents for Street Address (SAD):  <Street or Mailing Address (ST)> & <Street
             Name (ST)> & <Dwelling Number (ST)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time
             (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
             (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
             Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the address of the dispensing facility or the patient's location where the dispensing will occur.

4.14.5.32 RXD-32 Pharmacy Order Type (ID) 01690

Definition: The Pharmacy Order Type field defines the general category of pharmacy order which may be used to determine the processing path the order will take. Refer to *HL7 Table 0480 Pharmacy Order Types* for valid values.

This field may also be used for grouping of related orders for processing and/or reports. For example, Medication Administration Records (MARs) often group large volume solutions, medications and small volume solutions differently based upon site-specific workflow.

Usage Rule: This field is optional for all Pharmacy transactions. When not populated, a default value of "M" is assumed.

4.14.5.33 RXD-33 Dispense Type (CWE) 01691

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This is the type of dispensing event that occurred. Refer to *User-defined Table 0484 – Dispense Type* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0484 – Dispense Type

Value	Description	Comment
B	Trial Quantity Balance	
C	Compassionate Fill	
N	New/Renew - Full Fill	
P	New/Renew - Part Fill	
Q	Refill - Part Fill	

Value	Description	Comment
R	Refill - Full Fill	
S	Manufacturer Sample	
T	Trial Quantity	
Z	Non-Prescription Fill	

4.14.6 RXG - Pharmacy/Treatment Give Segment

HL7 Attribute Table – RXG – Pharmacy/Treatment Give

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	NM	R			00342	Give Sub-ID Counter
2	4	NM	O			00334	Dispense Sub-ID Counter
3	200	TQ	B			00221	Quantity/Timing
4	250	CE	R		0292	00317	Give Code
5	20	NM	R			00318	Give Amount - Minimum
6	20	NM	O			00319	Give Amount - Maximum
7	250	CE	R			00320	Give Units
8	250	CE	O			00321	Give Dosage Form
9	250	CE	O	Y		00351	Administration Notes
10	1	ID	O		0167	00322	Substitution Status
11	200	LA2	O			01303	Dispense-To Location
12	1	ID	O		0136	00307	Needs Human Review
13	250	CE	O	Y		00343	Pharmacy/Treatment Supplier's Special Administration Instructions
14	20	ST	C			00331	Give Per (Time Unit)
15	6	ST	O			00332	Give Rate Amount
16	250	CE	O			00333	Give Rate Units
17	20	NM	O			01126	Give Strength
18	250	CE	O			01127	Give Strength Units
19	20	ST	O	Y		01129	Substance Lot Number
20	26	TS	O	Y		01130	Substance Expiration Date
21	250	CE	O	Y	0227	01131	Substance Manufacturer Name
22	250	CE	O	Y		01123	Indication
23	5	NM	O			01692	Give Drug Strength Volume
24	250	CWE	O			01693	Give Drug Strength Volume Units
25	60	CWE	O			01694	Give Barcode Identifier
26	1	ID	O		0480	01695	Pharmacy Order Type

4.14.6.0 RXG fields definitions

4.14.6.1 RXG-1 Give Sub-ID Counter (NM) 00342

Definition: Use if this RXG segment carries information about a single administration. This field must contain a unique number for the placer order number. This field along with the placer order number

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

provides a unique reference to the specific scheduled give date/time transmitted by the pharmacy/treatment supplier for this order.

If the RXG segment carries information about multiple administrations, this field's value is zero (0), since in this case a one-to-one matching with the RXA segment is ambiguous.

4.14.6.2 RXG-2 Dispense Sub-ID Counter (NM) 00334

Definition: This is the dispense sub-ID to which this give message is related.

4.14.6.3 RXG-3 Quantity/Timing (TQ) 00221

```
Components:  <Quantity (CQ)> ^ <Interval (RI)> ^ <Duration (ST)> ^ <Start Date/Time
           (TS)> ^ <End Date/Time (TS)> ^ <Priority (ST)> ^ <Condition (ST)> ^ <Text
           (TX)> ^ <Conjunction (ID)> ^ <Order Sequencing (OSD)> ^ <Occurrence
           Duration (CE)> ^ <Total Occurrences (NM)>

Subcomponents for Quantity (CQ):  <Quantity (NM)> & <Units (CE)>

           Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Interval (RI):  <Repeat Pattern (IS)> & <Explicit Time Interval
           (ST)>

Subcomponents for Start Date/Time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
           Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for End Date/Time (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
           (ID)>

Subcomponents for Order Sequencing (OSD):  <Sequence/Results Flag (ID)> & <Placer
           Order Number: Entity Identifier (ST)> & <Placer Order Number: Namespace ID
           (IS)> & <Filler Order Number: Entity Identifier (ST)> & <Filler Order
           Number: Namespace ID (IS)> & <Sequence Condition Value (ST)> & <Maximum
           Number of Repeats (NM)> & <Placer Order Number: Universal ID (ST)> &
           <Placer Order Number: Universal ID Type (ID)> & <Filler Order Number:
           Universal ID (ST)> & <Filler Order Number: Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Occurrence Duration (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name
           of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text
           (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: ***This field is retained for backward compatibility only.*** The reader is referred to the TQ1 and TQ2 segments described in sections 4.5.4 and 4.5.5 respectively.

This field contains the quantity/timing specification that refers to either a single scheduled give instruction only or to multiple give instructions. In the former case, *RXG-1-give sub-ID counter* is a positive integer greater than or equal to one (1). In the latter case, *RXG-1-give sub-ID counter* is zero (0). The quantity will always be 1. This quantity/timing field may differ from the ORC quantity/timing field, which contains the requested quantity/timing of the original order.

Note: The contents of fields 3-8 should be identical to the comparable fields in the RXE (RXE-2 thru 5).

4.14.6.4 RXG-4 Give Code (CE) 00317

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
           <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
           Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the identifier of the medical substance/treatment ordered to be given to the patient; it is equivalent to *OBR-4-Universal service ID* in function. See the RXE segment for a complete definition

of the *RXE-2-Give code*. If the substance given is a vaccine, CVX codes may be used to code this field (see *HL7 table 0292 - Vaccines administered*).

4.14.6.5 RXG-5 Give Amount – Minimum (NM) 00318

Definition: This field contains the ordered amount as encoded by the pharmacy/treatment supplier. In a variable dose order, this is the minimum ordered amount. In a nonvarying dose order, this is the exact amount of the order.

Note: This field is not a duplication of the first component of the quantity/timing field, since in non-pharmacy/treatment orders, that component can be used to specify multiples of an ordered amount.

Another way to say this is that, for pharmacy/treatment orders, the quantity component of the quantity/timing field refers to what is to be given out at each service interval; and thus, in terms of the RX order, that first component always defaults to 1. Hence, in the actual execution of the order, the value of 1 in the first component of the quantity/timing field always refers to one administration of the amount specified in this field (the requested Give Amount field).

4.14.6.6 RXG-6 Give Amount - Maximum (NM) 00319

Definition: In a variable dose order, this is the maximum ordered amount. In a nonvarying dose order, this field is not used.

4.14.6.7 RXG-7 Give Units (CE) 00320

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units for the give amount.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity;" i.e., the units may contain the word "per." For example, micrograms per KG (micg/kg) is an acceptable value, which means that the units are micrograms per KG (of body weight).

A table of standard units that contains compound units is needed. Until such a table is agreed on, a user-defined table is needed for each site.

4.14.6.8 RXG-8 Give Dosage Form (CE) 00321

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: The dosage form indicates the manner in which the medication/treatment is aggregated for dispensing, e.g., tablets, capsules, suppositories. In some cases, this information is implied by the give code in *RXG-4-Give Code*. Use this field when the give code does not specify the dosage form.

4.14.6.9 RXG-9 Administration Notes (CE) 00351

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains notes to the person administering the medication/treatment (may include the ordering provider's original notes, as well as any notes from the formulary or the pharmacy or treatment supplier). If coded, a user-defined table must be used. If free text, place a null in the first component and the text in the second, e.g., |^this is a free text administration note|.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.14.6.10 RXG-10 Substitution Status (ID) 00322

Definition: Refer to *HL7 Table 0167 - Substitution Status* for valid values.

Note: The next two fields are equivalent to the corresponding fields of the RXE segment. They are included (optionally) in the RXG so that it may "stand alone" as a "give" instruction segment.

4.14.6.11 RXG-11 Dispense-to Location (LA2) 01303

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
             <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
             <Floor (IS)> ^ <Street Address (ST)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City
             (ST)> ^ <State or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country
             (ID)> ^ <Address Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation  (ST)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: The first component contains the inpatient or outpatient location where the drug or treatment was dispensed (if applicable). The default (null) value is the current census location for the patient. Site-specific table. The first eight components have the same form as the first eight components of *PV1-3-assigned patient location.* The final eight components replace the ninth component of *PV1-3-assigned patient location* and represent the full address specification.

4.14.6.12 RXG-12 Needs Human Review (ID) 00307

Definition: Refer to *HL7 Table 0136 - Yes/No Indicator* for valid values. The values have the following meaning for this field:

Y Yes - Indicates that a warning is present. The application receiving the dispense order needs to warn the person dispensing/administering the drug or treatment to pay attention to the text in *RXG-13-pharmacy/treatment supplier's special administration instructions*.

N No - Indicates no warning is present. This is the equivalent default (null) value.

4.14.6.13 RXG-13 Pharmacy/Treatment Supplier's Special Administration Instructions (CE) 00343

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains pharmacy/treatment supplier-generated special instructions to the provider administering the order.

4.14.6.14 RXG-14 Give Per (Time Unit) (ST) 00331

Definition: This field contains the time unit to use to calculate the rate at which the pharmaceutical/treatment is to be administered.

Format:

S<integer>	=	<integer> seconds
M<integer>	=	<integer> minutes
H<integer>	=	<integer> hours
D<integer>	=	<integer> days
W<integer>	=	<integer> weeks
L<integer>	=	<integer> months

T<integer>	=	at the interval and amount stated until a total of <integer> "DOSAGE" is accumulated. Units would be assumed to be the same as in the QUANTITY field.
INDEF	=	do indefinitely - also the default

This is the same as the format specified for the DURATION component of the quantity/timing field, excluding the "X" specification.

Required when relevant (e.g., certain IVs). For example, if the "give amount/units" were 300 ml and the "give per" time unit were H1 (equivalent to one hour), the rate is 300ml/hr.

4.14.6.15 RXG-15 Give Rate Amount (ST) 00332

Definition: This field contains the amount (number) of substance/treatment to be administered.

4.14.6.16 RXG-16 Give Rate Units (CE) 00333

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units for *RXG-15-give rate amount*. May be composite. The ratio of the *RXG-15-give rate amount* and *RXG-16-give rate units* fields define the actual rate of administration. Thus, if *RXG-15-give rate amount* = 100 and *RXG-16-give rate units* = ml/hr, the requested rate of administration is 100 ml/hr.

4.14.6.17 RXG-17 Give Strength (NM) 01126

Definition: Use when *RXG-4-Give code* does not specify the strength. This is the numeric part of the strength, used in combination with *RXG-18-Give strength units*.

4.14.6.18 RXG-18 Give Strength Units (CE) 01127

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: Use when *RXG-4-Give Code* does not specify the strength. This is the unit of the strength, used in combination with *RXG-17-Give Strength*.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity"; i.e., the units may express a quantity per unit of time. For example, micrograms per hour (micg/h) is an acceptable value. These compound units are contained in the ISO+ table. See Chapter 7 for full definition of ISO+ units.

4.14.6.19 RXG-19 Substance Lot Number (ST) 01129

Definition: This field contains the lot number of the medical substance administered.

Note: The lot number is the number printed on the label attached to the container holding the substance and on the packaging which houses the container. If the substance is a vaccine, for example, and a diluent is required, a lot number may appear on the vial containing the diluent; however, any such identifier associated with a diluent is not the identifier of interest. The substance lot number should be reported, not that of the diluent.

4.14.6.20 RXG-20 Substance Expiration Date (TS) 01130

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the expiration date of the medical substance administered.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Note: Vaccine expiration date does not always have a "day" component; therefore, such a date may be transmitted as YYYYMM.

4.14.6.21 RXG-21 Substance Manufacturer Name (CE) 01131

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the manufacturer of the medical substance administered.

Note: For vaccines, code system MVX may be used to code this field (see Section 4.17.1, "Vaccine administration data"). This field may be used if the manufacturer of the substance is not identified by the code used in *RXA-5-administered code*.

4.14.6.22 RXG-22 Indication (CE) 01123

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier of the condition or problem for which the drug/treatment was prescribed. May repeat if multiple indications are relevant.

4.14.6.23 RXG-23 Give Drug Strength Volume (NM) 01692

Description: This numeric field defines the volume measurement in which the drug strength concentration is contained. For example, Acetaminophen 120 MG/5ML Elixir means that 120 MG of the drug is in a solution with a volume of 5 ML, which would be encoded in RXG-17, RXG-18, RXG-23 and RXG-24 as

```
RXG||||||||||||||||120|mg^^ISO|||||5|ml^^ISO …<cr>
```

4.14.6.24 RXG-24 Give Drug Strength Volume Units (CWE) 01693

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Description: This field indicates the volumetric unit associated with RXG-23 Give Drug Strength Volume. See example in RXG-23.

4.14.6.25 RXG-25 Give Barcode Identifier (CWE) 01694

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the pharmacy system's assigned barcode number for the give occurrence. For IV orders, many pharmacy systems generate a barcode number to identify a specific bag/bottle of the order. This number can be an instance identifier; unique for the patient, drug combination, and schedule instance or it may be just a drug identifier.

The composition and use of the barcode number is dependent on application negotiation. An example of this field follows: The barcode number is in the following format, 9XXXXXXX000. The number '9' is a constant, XXXXXXX is seven (7) characters for a unique identifier assigned or derived from the patient account and order ID and 000 is the zero-filled three (3) character IV bottle number.

The maximum length of the first component of this field is 40 characters to allow for the maximum existing barcode length in use today. The second component contains the description of the item being coded and the third component may define the barcode type.

12345678901^IV bottle^3X9

4.14.6.26 RXG-26 Pharmacy Order Type (ID) 01695

Definition: The Pharmacy Order Type field defines the general category of pharmacy order which may be used to determine the processing path the order will take. Refer to *HL7 Table 0480 Pharmacy Order Types* for valid values.

This field may also be used for grouping of related orders for processing and/or reports. For example, Medication Administration Records (MARs) often group large volume solutions, medications and small volume solutions differently based upon site-specific workflow.

Usage Rule: This field is optional for all Pharmacy transactions. When not populated, a default value of "M" is assumed.

4.14.7 RXA - Pharmacy/Treatment Administration Segment

The ORC must have the filler order number and the order control code RE. As a site-specific variant, the RXO and associated RXCs and/or the RXE (and associated RXCs) may be present if the receiving application needs any of their data. The RXA carries the administration data.

HL7 Attribute Table – RXA – Pharmacy/Treatment Administration

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	NM	R			00342	Give Sub-ID Counter
2	4	NM	R			00344	Administration Sub-ID Counter
3	26	TS	R			00345	Date/Time Start of Administration
4	26	TS	R			00346	Date/Time End of Administration
5	250	CE	R		0292	00347	Administered Code
6	20	NM	R			00348	Administered Amount
7	250	CE	C			00349	Administered Units
8	250	CE	O			00350	Administered Dosage Form
9	250	CE	O	Y		00351	Administration Notes
10	250	XCN	O	Y		00352	Administering Provider
11	200	LA2	C			00353	Administered-at Location
12	20	ST	C			00354	Administered Per (Time Unit)
13	20	NM	O			01134	Administered Strength
14	250	CE	O			01135	Administered Strength Units
15	20	ST	O	Y		01129	Substance Lot Number
16	26	TS	O	Y		01130	Substance Expiration Date
17	250	CE	O	Y	0227	01131	Substance Manufacturer Name
18	250	CE	O	Y		01136	Substance/Treatment Refusal Reason
19	250	CE	O	Y		01123	Indication

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
20	2	ID	O		0322	01223	Completion Status
21	2	ID	O		0323	01224	Action Code – RXA
22	26	TS	O			01225	System Entry Date/Time
23	5	NM	O			01696	Administered Drug Strength Volume
24	250	CWE	O			01697	Administered Drug Strength Volume Units
25	60	CWE	O			01698	Administered Barcode Identifier
26	1	ID	O		0480	01699	Pharmacy Order Type

4.14.7.0 RXA field definitions

4.14.7.1 RXA-1 Give Sub-ID Counter (NM) 00342

Definition: Use this field if matching this RXA segment to its corresponding RXG segment. If the two applications are not matching RXG and RXA segments, this field's value is zero (0).

4.14.7.2 RXA-2 Administration Sub-ID Counter (NM) 00344

Definition: This field starts with 1 the first time that medication/treatment is administered for this order. Increments by one with each additional administration the medication/treatment.

Note: More than one RXA segment can be "matched" to a single RXG segment, as is the case when recording a change of the rate of administration of an IV solution.

4.14.7.3 RXA-3 Date/Time Start of Administration (TS) 00345

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: If the order is for a continuous administration (such as an IV), and the rate is changed at a certain time after the start, an RAS message can be issued to record the change. For such an RAS message, this field records the time the rate was changed to the new value recorded in *the RXA-12-administered per (time unit)* of the same message.

4.14.7.4 RXA-4 Date/Time End of Administration (If Applies) (TS) 00346

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: If null, the date/time of *RXA-3-Date/Time Start of Administration* is assumed.

4.14.7.5 RXA-5 Administered Code (CE) 00347

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier of the medical substance/treatment administered. It is equivalent to *OBR-4-universal service ID* in function. If the substance administered is a vaccine, CVX codes may be used to code this field (see *HL7 Table 0292 - Vaccines Administered*).

4.14.7.6 RXA-6 Administered Amount (NM) 00348

Definition: This field contains the amount administered.

4.14.7.7 RXA-7 Administered units (CE) 00349

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is conditional because it is required if the administered amount code does not imply units. This field must be in simple units that reflect the actual quantity of the substance administered. It does not include compound units.

4.14.7.8 RXA-8 Administered Dosage Form (CE) 00350

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: The dosage form indicates the manner in which the medication/treatment is aggregated for dispensing, e.g., tablets, capsules, suppositories. In some cases, this information is implied by the dispense/give code in *RXA-5-Administered Code*. Use this field when the administered code does not specify the dosage form.

4.14.7.9 RXA-9 Administration Notes (CE) 00351

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains notes from the provider administering the medication/treatment. If coded, requires a user-defined table. If free text (describing a custom IV, mixture, or salve, for example) place a null in the first component and the text in the second, e.g., `|^this is a free text administration note|`.

4.14.7.10 RXA-10 Administering Provider (XCN) 00352

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
             Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
             (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
             <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
             <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
             Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
             (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
             <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
             (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
             <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
             Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
             Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
             Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
             & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
             <Range End Date/Time (TS)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
            Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
            (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
            Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
            <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
            Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
            Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
            Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
            (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
            <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
            System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
            <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the provider ID of the person administering the pharmaceutical/treatment.

4.14.7.11 RXA-11 Administered-at Location (LA2) 00353

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
            <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Patient Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
            <Floor (IS)> ^ <Street Address (ST)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City
            (ST)> ^ <State or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country
            (ID)> ^ <Address Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation  (ST)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
            <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: The first component contains the inpatient or outpatient location at which the drug or treatment was administered (if applicable). The default (null) value is the current census location for the patient. Site-specific table. The first eight components have the same form as the first eight components of *PV1-3-assigned patient location.* The final eight components replace the ninth component of *PV1-3-assigned patient location* and represent the full address specification.

4.14.7.12 RXA-12 Administered Per (Time Unit) (ST) 00354

Definition: This field contains the rate at which this medication/treatment was administered as calculated by using *RXA-6-administered amount* and *RXA-7-administered units*. This field is conditional because it is required when a treatment is administered continuously at a prescribed rate, e.g., certain IV solutions.

4.14.7.13 RXA-13 Administered Strength (NM) 01134

Definition: Use when *RXA-5-Administered Code* does not specify the strength. This is the numeric part of the strength, used in combination with *RXA-14-Administered Strength Units*.

4.14.7.14 RXA-14 Administered Strength Units (CE) 01135

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
            <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
            Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: Use when *RXA-5-Administered Code* does not specify the strength. This is the unit of the strength, used in combination with *RXA-13-Administered Strength*.

Note: These units can be a "compound quantity;" i.e., the units may express a quantity per unit of time. For example, micrograms per hour (micg/h) is an acceptable value. These compound units are contained in the ISO+ table. See Chapter 7 for full definition of ISO+ units.

4.14.7.15 RXA-15 Substance Lot Number (ST) 01129

Definition: This field contains the lot number of the medical substance administered.

Note: The lot number is the number printed on the label attached to the container holding the substance and on the packaging which houses the container. If the substance is a vaccine, for example, and a diluent is required, a lot number may appear on the vial containing the diluent; however, any such identifier associated with a diluent is not the identifier of interest. The substance lot number should be reported, not that of the diluent.

4.14.7.16 RXA-16 Substance Expiration Date (TS) 01130

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the expiration date of the medical substance administered.

Note: Vaccine expiration date does not always have a "day" component; therefore, such a date may be transmitted as YYYYMM.

4.14.7.17 RXA-17 Substance Manufacturer Name (CE) 01131

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the manufacturer of the medical substance administered.

Note: For vaccines, code system MVX may be used to code this field). See Section 4.17.1. This field may be used if the manufacturer of the substance is not identified by the code used in *RXA-5- administered code*.

4.14.7.18 RXA-18 Substance/Treatment Refusal Reason (CE) 01136

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the reason the patient refused the medical substance/treatment. Any entry in the field indicates that the patient did not take the substance.

4.14.7.19 RXA-19 Indication (CE) 01123

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier of the condition or problem for which the drug/treatment was prescribed. May repeat if multiple indications are relevant.

4.14.7.20 RXA-20 Completion Status (ID) 01223

Definition: Status of treatment administration event. Refer to *HL7 Table 0322 - Completion Status* for valid values.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

HL7 Table 0322 - Completion Status

Value	Description	Comment
CP	Complete	
RE	Refused	
NA	Not Administered	
PA	Partially Administered	

4.14.7.21 RXA-21 Action Code – RXA (ID) 01224

Definition: Status of record. The information in this field enables the use of the RXA in the vaccine messages (see Section *4.18*, "*Vaccine Segments*"), where a method of correcting vaccination information transmitted with incorrect patient identifying information is needed. Refer To *HL7 Table 0323 - Action Code* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0323 - Action Code

Value	Description	Comment
A	Add	
D	Delete	
U	Update	

4.14.7.22 RXA-22 System Entry Date/Time (TS) 01225

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: Date/time the administration information was entered into the source system. This field is used to detect instances where treatment administration information is inadvertently entered multiple times by providing a unique identification field. Under usual circumstances, this field would be provided automatically by the computer system rather than being entered by a person.

4.14.7.23 RXA-23 Administered Drug Strength Volume (NM) 01696

Description: This numeric field defines the volume measurement in which the drug strength concentration is contained. For example, Acetaminophen 120 MG/5ML Elixir means that 120 MG of the drug is in a solution with a volume of 5 ML , which would be encoded in RXA-13, RXA-14, RXA-23 and RXA-24 as

```
RXA||||||||||||120|mg^^ISO|||||||||5|ml^^ISO …<cr>
```

4.14.7.24 RXA-24 Administered Drug Strength Volume Units (CWE) 01697

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
           <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
           Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
           System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Description: This field indicates the volumetric unit associated with RXA-23 Administered Drug Strength Volume. See example in RXA-23.

4.14.7.25 RXA-25 Administered Barcode Identifier (CWE) 01698

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
           <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
           Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
           System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the pharmacy system's assigned barcode number for the give occurrence. For IV orders, many pharmacy systems generate a barcode number to identify a specific bag/bottle of the order. This number can be an instance identifier; unique for the patient, drug combination, and schedule instance or it may be just a drug identifier.

The composition and use of the barcode number is dependent on application negotiation. An example of this field follows: The barcode number is in the following format, 9XXXXXXX000. The number '9' is a constant, XXXXXXX is seven (7) characters for a unique identifier assigned or derived from the patient account and order ID and 000 is the zero-filled three (3) character IV bottle number.

The maximum length of the first component of this field is 40 characters to allow for the maximum existing barcode length in use today. The second component contains the description of the item being coded and the third component may define the barcode type.

```
Example: 12345678901^IV bottle^3X9
```

4.14.7.26 RXA-26 Pharmacy Order Type (ID) 01699

Definition: The Pharmacy Order Type field defines the general category of pharmacy order which may be used to determine the processing path the order will take. Refer to *HL7 Table 0480 Pharmacy Order Types* for valid values.

This field may also be used for grouping of related orders for processing and/or reports. For example, Medication Administration Records (MARs) often group large volume solutions, medications and small volume solutions differently based upon site-specific workflow.

Usage Rule: This field is optional for all Pharmacy transactions. When not populated, a default value of "M" is assumed.

4.15 PHARMACY/TREATMENT MESSAGE EXAMPLES

The purpose of this section is to show how certain specific situations would be handled using the pharmacy/treatment protocol. The ellipses represent uncompleted details. The symbol // precedes comments for clarification.

4.15.1 Example of various levels of coding in an order

The order *give 500 mg Ampicillin P.O. Q6H for 10 days for a total of 40 tablets* is sent to the RX application from the OE application. This order can be coded with various levels of precision by an ordering application:

a) E-mail only version (uses only free text, *RXO-6-provider's pharmacy/treatment instructions* or *RXO-7-provider's administration instructions* only); fully encoded version must be re-entered or verified manually by the pharmacy or treatment application.

b) With RXO-2-requested give amount-minimum, RXO-4-requested give units, and ORC-7-quantity/timing coded, and RXO-1-requested give code as free text.

c) With RXO-1-requested give code, RXO-2-requested give amount-minimum, RXO-4-requested give units, and ORC-7-quantity/timing coded, but where RXO-1-requested give code does not include units.

d) With RXO-1-requested give code, RXO-2-requested give amount-minimum, RXO-4-requested give units, and ORC-7-quantity/timing coded, and where RXO-1-requested give code does include units.

In this case, the units are optional. The rule for this case (on orders, dispense results, give results, and administration results) is as follows: if units are coded, they override or supersede the units value implied by the give code.

a) The E-mail only version of the order: no coded fields exist in the RXO.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052911150700||OMP^O09^OMP_O09|
   ...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1000^OE||||E|...<cr>

RXO||||||500 mg Polycillin Q6H for 10 days, dispense 40
   Tablets|...<cr>
```

b) A partially coded version of the order. This version has the RXO-2-requested give amount-minimum, RXO-4-requested give units, and ORC-7-quantity/timing coded, but the RXO-1-requested give code as free text.

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052911150700||OMP^O09^OMP_O09|
   ...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1000^OE||||E|^Q6H^D10^^^R|...<cr>

RXO|^Polycillin 500 mg TAB^|500||MG|||||Y||40|...<cr>

RXR|PO|...<cr>
```

c) A more completely coded version of the order, with the RXO-1-requested give code, RXO-2-requested give amount-minimum, RXO-4-requested give units, and ORC-7-quantity/timing coded, but where RXO-1-requested give code does not imply units.

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052911150700||OMP^O09^OMP_O09|
   ...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1000^OE||||E|^Q6H^D10^^^R|...<cr>

RXO|RX1001^Polycillin^L|500||MG|||||Y||40|...<cr>

RXR|PO|...<cr>
```

d) A completely encoded version, with the RXO-1-requested give code, RXO-2-requested give amount-minimum, RXO-4-requested give units, and ORC-7-quantity/timing coded, and where RXO-1-requested give code does imply units.

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052911150700||OMP^O09^OMP_O09|
   ...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|NW|1000^OE||||E|^Q6H^D10^^^R|...<cr>

RXO|RX1001^Polycillin 500 mg TAB^L|500||MG|||||G||40|...<cr>

RXR|PO|...<cr>
```

e) Pharmacy or treatment supplier's encoded version (RDE message) sent to nursing application (a generic substitution).

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052911150700||RDE^O11^RDE_O11|
   ...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|RE|1000^OE|9999999^RX|||E|^Q6H^D10^^^R|...<cr>

RXE|^^^199012100600^^R|0047-0402-30^Ampicillin 250 MG
    TAB^NDC|2||TAB|||||G|80||||123456|rx#1001|...<cr>

RXR|PO|...<cr>
```

f) Pharmacy or treatment supplier's dispense results (RDS message).

```
MSH|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|RE|1000^OE|9999999^RX|||E|^Q6H^D10^^^R|...<cr>

RXD|1|0047-0402-30^Ampicillin 250 MG
   TAB^NDC|199012100400|8|TAB||RX#1001|||

    123456|G|8|...<cr>
```

g) Pharmacy or treatment supplier's give results (RGV message).

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052911150700||RGV^O15^RGV_O15|
   ...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|RE|1000^OE|9999999^RX|||E|^Q6H^D10^^^R|...<cr>

RXG|1|1|^^199012100600^^R|0047-0402-30^Ampicillin 250 MG
   TAB^NDC|500||MG|||G|...<cr>

RXR|PO|...<cr>
```

h) Nursing application Medications Administration results to pharmacy, treatment, or Order Entry application.

```
MSH|^&~\|Pharm|GenHosp|CIS|GenHosp|1998052911150700||RAS^O17^RAS_O17|
   ...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

ORC|RE|1000^OE|9999999^RX|||E|^Q6H^D10^^^R|...<cr>

RXA|1|1|199012100615||0047-0402-30^Ampicillin 250 MG
   TAB^NDC|2|TAB|...<cr>

RXR|PO|...<cr>
```

4.15.2 RXO segment field examples

4.15.2.1 RXO-1 Requested Give code example

```
RXO|58160040000110^Fluoxetine HCL 10mg Capsule^GPI^00777310402^Prozac 10
   mg caps^NDC|...<cr>
```

4.15.2.2 RXO-18 and RXO-19 Requested Strength and Strength Unit examples

The need for strength and strength unit fields in addition to the amount and amount units fields included in various RX_ segments requires explanation. Physicians can write a prescription for a drug such as Ampicillin in two ways. One way would be: "Ampicillin 250 mg capsules, 2 capsules four times a day." In this case the give amount would be 2, the give units would be capsules, the strength would be 250 and the strength units would milligrams.

```
ORC||||||1^QID|...<cr>

RXO|01200020200105^Ampicillin 250 mg capsule^GPI^00047040230^Ampicillin
   250 mg caps^NDC|2||caps^capsule^FDB||||||||||||250|mg|...<cr>
```

However, the provider could also write the prescription as "Ampicillin 500 mg four times a day." In this case the give amount would be 500 and the give units would be milligrams. The strength would not be reported in the RXO segment because it is not specified; the drug could be given in two 250 mg caps or one 500 mg cap. But the pharmacist would dispense a specific capsule size and would record the strength in the RXE segment as 250 or 500, depending upon which pill size was dispensed.

```
ORC||||||1^QID|...<cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
RXO|012000202001^Ampicillin capsule^GPI |500||mg^milligram^ISO||...<cr>
```

4.15.3 RXD segment field examples

4.1.1.1 RXD-4 and RXD-5 Dispense amount and Actual dispense units

The RXD-4 and RXD-5 together might say

100 tabs:

```
RXD||||100|TAB^tablet^FDB|...<cr>
```

Or, 100 each

```
RXD||||100|EA^each^FDB|...<cr>
```

Or, perhaps a volume, 3 liters

```
RXD||||3|L^liter^ISO|...<cr>
```

4.1.1.2 Actual dispense amount, Actual dispense units, Actual strength, Actual strength units

For example, the RXD-4, RXD-5, RXD-16 and RXD-17 together might say

100 tabs of 240 mg strength:

```
RXD||||100|tab^tablet^FDB||||||||||240|mg|...<cr>
```

Or, 100 each of 60 units per cc

```
RXD||||100|EA||||||||||60|iu/ml^^ISO+|...<cr>
```

Or, perhaps a volume, 3 liters with 60 grams per liter

```
RXD||||3|L^liter^ISO||||||||||60|g/L^^ISO+|...<cr>
```

4.1.1.3 Valuing the Dispense Package Size Unit

If the package given to the patient is 2, 4 ounce bottles with a strength of 100/5ml, but the cough suppressant is stocked in 1 gallon bottles, then the field contains 1 gallon.

```
RXD||||8|ounce^^ISO||||||||||20|mg/ml|||||1|gal^gallon^ISO|...<cr>
```

If one were to dispense Mevacor 100 tablets with a strength of 20 mg/tablet, and the package from the manufacturer is a 60 tablet package, then the fields reflect 60 tablets (the size of the package stocked by the pharmacy).

```
RXD||||100|tab^^FDB||||||||||20|mg|||||60|tab|...<cr>
```

4.15.4 RDS with FT1 segments example

Example: Adam Everyman appears in the Pharmacy with a prescription for Veramil 120 mgm B.I.D. The prescription is filled and the $5 co-pay is collected. The following RDS message is generated:

```
MSH|^&~\|PIMS|GenHosp|IE||1998052911150700||RDS^O13^RDS_O13||...<cr>
PID|||555444222111^^^MPI&GenHosp&L^MR||Everyman^Adam||19600614|M||C|99
   Oakland #
   106^^Pasadena^CA^91131||^^^^^626^5641111|^^^^^626^5647654|||||3431322
   66|||N|...<cr>
```

```
ORC|RE||89968665||||||1998052910300700|||77^Hippocrates^Harold^H^III^DR^
   MD||^^^^^510^ 2673600|...<cr>

RXE|1^BID^^19980529|^Verapamil|120||mg^milligram^FDB.MDDB||...<cr>

RXD|1|00378112001^Verapamil Hydrochloride 120 mg TAB^NDC |199805291115-
   0700|100|||1331665|3|...<cr>

RXR|PO|...<cr>

FT1|1|||199805291115-0700||CO^Co-Pay^HL70017 |00378112001^Verapamil
   Hydrochloride 120 mg TAB^NDC |||1|5&USD^TP|...<cr>

FT1|2|||199805291115-0700||PY^Payment^HL70017 |00378112001^Verapamil
   Hydrochloride 120 mg TAB^NDC |||1|5&USD|...<cr>
```

4.15.5 Alternating IV order messages

HL7 Delimiters: <cr> = segment terminator; | = field separator; ^ = component separator; & = subcomponent separator; ~ = repetition indicator; \ = escape character

Encoding Note: For readability, these examples do not show encoding of the subcomponents of the Give Codes (CE data type) in the RXC and RXO segments. In practice, the subcomponents should be encoded as described in the HL7 specification.

a) Example #1

D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL with 20mEq KCl in every 3rd bottle. Start the KCl in the 3rd bottle of this order. Run in at a rate of 100mL/hr.

(Other message data: placer order #123, placer application ID=SMS, interval=continuous, start date/time=11/28/94 0900, no stop date/time, priority=Routine, order sequencing=Cyclical)

This order may be expressed using a parent/child relationship. The parent order consists of an ORC (and a RXO, incompletely elaborated in this example) that contains order level information. The repeating bottle cycle of D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL followed by D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL followed by D5/0.45NaCl + 20mEq KCL 1000mL is represented by three child segments. The placer system may be treating this as a single order with two bottles, A (D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL @ 100mL/hr) and B (D5/0.45NaCl + 20mEq KCL 1000mL @ 100mL/hr), repeating in the cycle of A-A-B.

<u>The parent:</u>

```
ORC|NW|123^SMS|||||1^C^^199411280900^^R^^^^C|...<cr>

RXO|Cyclic IV|...<cr>
```

The first child:

```
ORC|CH|123A1^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&123B&SMS&&&*ES+0M|123|...<cr>

RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|100||ML|...

          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>

RXR|IV|...<cr>

RXC|B|D5/.45NACL|1000|ML|...<cr>
```

The second child:

```
ORC|CH|123A2^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&123A1&SMS&&&ES+0M|123|...<cr>

RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|100||ML|...
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5/.45NACL|1000|ML|...<cr>
```

The third child:

```
ORC|CH|123B^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&123A2&SMS&&&#ES+0M|123|...<cr>
RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|100||ML|...
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5/.45NACL|1000|ML|...<cr>
RXC|A|KCL|20|MEQ|...<cr>
```

Discussion points:

Placer Order Number - Three alternatives must be discussed for placer order number.

1) Each child could have its own placer order number.
2) Each child could have the order number of the parent plus some appended identifier (for examples, 123A or 123.A or 123.1 etc.) that labels each child or each unique combination of ingredients.
3) In addition to the appended identifier discussed in 'B' above, a further suffix could be attached to uniquely identify each repetition of a particular member of the sequence. The example (a cycle of bottles 'A' and 'B' in the sequence A-A-B) identified the order numbers of the children as 123A1, 123A2, and 123B, thereby enabling the quantity/timing to be completely unambiguous. This could be expressed many other ways, such as 123A.1 or 123.A.1 or 123.A#1 etc. HL7 does not specify a format for the expression of order number suffixes, nor does it specify a delimiter to use for such a purpose.

Sequence Condition Value - In this example, the first child contains an asterisk (*) as the first character of the Sequence Condition Value and the third (last) child contains a pound sign (#).

The asterisk and pound sign are important for designating the first and last bottles especially when children are sent in separate messages, although this example is not constructed that way.

Note that computing the duration of the bottle is dependent upon the presence of <u>all</u> of the following fields:

- RXO-2-requested give amount-minimum
- RXO-4-requested give units
- RXC-3-component amount
- RXC-4-component units

For cyclic IV orders, these fields are all required in order to determine how long each occurrence of a child will last.

While HL7 allows either sending the parent and children in one message or sending the parent and children in separate messages, it appears simpler and therefore recommended to have the parent and all children included in a single message. The example is constructed that way.

b) Example #2

D5W + 40mEq KCl 1000mL alternating with D5/LR + 20mEq KCl 1000mL at 125mL/hr

(Other message data: placer order #124, placer application ID=SMS, interval=continuous, start date/time=11/28/94 0900, no stop date/time, priority=Routine, order sequencing=Cyclical)

This example is a variation on the first example where two different base solutions are used. In this example, the placer system deals with this as one order with two alternating bottles, A (D5W + 40mEq KCl 1000mL @ 125mL/hr) and B (D5/LR + 20mEq KCl 1000mL @ 125mL/hr) in the cycle A-B. The principles discussed in Example #1 apply equally to this example.

The parent:

```
ORC|NW|124^SMS||||1^C^^199411280900^^R^^^^C|...<cr>
RXO|Cyclic IV|...<cr>
```

The first child:

```
ORC|CH|124A^SMS||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&124B&SMS&&&*ES+0M|124|...<cr>
RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|125||ML|...
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5W|1000|ML|...<cr>
RXC|A|KCL|40|MEQ|...<cr>
```

The second child:

```
ORC|CH|124B^SMS||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&124A&SMS&&&#ES+0M|124|...<cr>
RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|125||ML|...
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5/LR|1000|ML|...<cr>
RXC|A|KCL|20|MEQ|...<cr>
```

a) Example #3

D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL with 20mEq KCl in every 3rd bottle. Start the KCl in the 3rd bottle of this order. Add 10mL of multi-vitamins to the one bag daily. Run in at a rate of 100mL/hr.

(Other message data: placer order #134, placer application ID=SMS, interval=continuous, start date/time=11/28/94 0900, no stop date/time, priority=Routine, order sequencing=Cyclical. Note that the encoding of the multi-vitamins statement in the above order, adding multi-vitamins to one IV bag each day, may vary by institution to put it into the first or last bottle of the day.)

This order may be expressed using a parent/child relationship. The parent order consists of an ORC (and a RXO, although I did not completely elaborate one in this example) that contains order level information. The repeating bottle cycle of D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL followed by D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL followed by D5/0.45NaCl + 20mEq KCL 1000mL is represented by three child segments. This order is complicated by the request to add one component into any one of the three repeating bottles, depending upon which of the bottles will occur first on any particular day. Further complicating this order is a rate of infusion (10 hours for a 1000mL bottle) which results in a

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

fractional number of daily administrations. Most legacy systems have a great deal of trouble accommodating orders like this within their existing database structures; however there a few vendors who now are able to handle the situation. The placer system may be treating this as a single order with two bottles, A (D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL @ 100mL/hr) and B (D5/0.45NaCl + 20mEq KCL 1000mL @ 100mL/hr), repeating in the cycle of A-A-B with a cyclical component (multi-vitamins).

The parent:

```
ORC|NW|134^SMS|||||1^C^^199411280900^^R^^^^C|...<cr>
RXO|Cyclic IV|...<cr>
```

The first child:

```
ORC|CH|134A1^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&134B&SMS&&&*ES+0M|134|...<cr>
RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|100||ML|...
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5/.45NACL|1000|ML|...<cr>
```

The second child:

```
ORC|CH|134A2^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&134A1&SMS&&&ES+0M|134|...<cr>
RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|100||ML|...
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5/.45NACL|1000|ML|...<cr>
```

The third child:

```
ORC|CH|134B^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&134A2&SMS&&&#ES+0M|134|...<cr>
RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|100||ML|...
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5/.45NACL|1000|ML|...<cr>
RXC|A|KCL|20|MEQ|...<cr>
```

The fourth child:

```
ORC|CH|134X^SMS|||||1^Q1D^^^^^^^^|134|...<cr>
RXO|MULTIVITAMINS|10||ML|INJECTABLE|...<cr>
```

Discussion points:

This method for accommodating the Multi-vitamins Daily scenario does not pretend to be the best or only way to express the message, but simply demonstrates adapting the current specification to a highly complex order without adding new components.

The Multi-vitamins component may be sent as a fourth child.

In this example, its *ORC-7-quantity/timing* includes an interval of "Q1D" (every 1 days).

Its order number consists of the placer's parent order number plus an appended identifier ('X' in the above example) that labels this child as a special case. This convention would need to be agreed upon by sending and receiving applications.

c) Example #4

D5W + 40mEq KCl 1000mL alternating with D5/LR + 20mEq KCl 1000mL alternating with D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL. Infuse the D5W and D5/0.45 at 125mL/hr, and the D5/LR at 100mL/hr.

(Other message data: placer order #177, placer application ID=SMS, interval=continuous, start date/time=11/28/94 0900, no stop date/time, priority=Routine, order sequencing=Cyclical)

This example is another variation of Example 1 where the rate for each bottle is different, and this can be expressed within the RX segments of the children using current components. In this example, the placer system deals with this as one order with three alternating bottles, A (D5W + 40mEq KCl 1000mL @ 125mL/hr) , B (D5/LR + 20mEq KCl 1000mL @ 100mL/hr) , and C (D5/0.45NaCl 1000mL @ 125mL/hr) in the cycle A-B-C. The principles discussed in Example #1 apply equally to this example.

The parent:

```
ORC|NW|177^SMS|||||1^C^^199411280900^^R^^^^C|...<cr>
RXO|Cyclic IV|...<cr>
```

The first child:

```
ORC|CH|177A^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&177C&SMS&&&*ES+0M|177|...<cr>
    RXO Segment, Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|125||ML|...
    Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5W|1000|ML|...<cr>
RXC|A|KCL|40|MEQ|...<cr>
```

The second child:

```
ORC|CH|177B^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&177A&SMS&&&ES+0M|177|...<cr>
RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|100||ML|...
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5/LR|1000|ML|...<cr>
RXC|A|KCL|20|MEQ|...<cr>
```

The third child:

```
ORC|CH|177C^SMS|||||1^C^^^^^^^^C&177B&SMS&&&#ES+0M|177|...<cr>
RXO Segment,     Requested Give Amount-Minimum: ...|125||ML|...
          Requested Give Per (Time Unit):  ...|H1|...<cr>
RXR|IV|...<cr>
RXC|B|D5/0.45NACL|1000|ML|...<cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.15.6 Query examples

With appropriate definitions in the QRD and/or QRF segments, the RDE, RDS, RGV, and RAS messages can serve as models for result-oriented pharmacy/treatment queries returning the current profile of pharmacy or treatment orders (RDE type), the current dispense history (RDS type), the current dose history (RGV type), or the current administration record (RAS type)…"

The order entry application requests pharmacy/treatment order information for patient 12345, from 8/12/92 through 8/13/92.

```
MSH|^&~\|||||199208201200||QRY^O29^QRY_Q01|...<cr>
QRD|19920814181254|R|D|9200785|||45^RD|12345|RER|...<cr>
QRF|PHM|19920812000000|19920813235959|...<cr>
DSC|...<cr>

MSH|^&~\|||||199208201201||RER^RER^RER_RER|...<cr>
MSA|AA|1001|...<cr>
QRD|...<cr>
QRF|...<cr>
ORC|RE|3346^OE|R23^RX|...<cr>
RXE|^BID^D5^199208120800^199208162000|10986^AMPICILLIN|250||MG|...<cr>
RXR|PO|...<cr>
ORC|RE|3987^OE|R76^RX|...<cr>
RXE|^TID^D7^199208120600^199208182200|12796^ASPIRIN|325||MG|...<cr>
RXR|PO|...<cr>
DSC|...<cr>
```

The lab application requests pharmacy/treatment administration information for patient 12345, from 8/12/92 through 8/13/92.

```
MSH|^&~\|||||199208201200||QRY^O27^QRY_Q01|...<cr>
QRD|19920814165645|R|D|9200231|||30^RD|12345|RAR|...<cr>
QRF|PHM|19920812000000|19920813235959|...<cr>
DSC|...<cr>

MSH|^&~\|||||199208201201||RAR^RAR^RAR_RAR|...<cr>
MSA|AA|1002|...<cr>
QRD|...<cr>
QRF|...<cr>
ORC|RE||R23^RX|...<cr>
RXE|^BID^D5^199208120800^199208162000|10986^AMPICILLIN|250||MG|...<cr>
RXR|PO|...<cr>
RXA|1|1|199208120800|199208120800|10986^AMPICILLIN|250|...<cr>
RXA|2|2|199208122000|199208122000|10986^AMPICILLIN|250|...<cr>
```

```
RXA|3|3|199208130800|199208130800|10986^AMPICILLIN|250|...<cr>
RXA|4|4|199208132000|199208132000|10986^AMPICILLIN|250|...<cr>
ORC|RE||R76^RX|...<cr>
RXE|^TID^D7^199208120600^199208182200|12796^ASPIRIN|325||MG|...<cr>
RXR|PO|...<cr>RXA|1|1|199208120600|199208120600|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr
   >
RXA|2|2|199208121400|199208121400|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXA|3|3|199208122200|199208122200|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXA|4|4|199208130600|199208130600|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXA|5|5|199208131400|199208131400|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXA|6|6|199208132200|199208132200|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
DSC|...<cr>
```

The nursing system requests pharmacy/treatment dose information for patient 12345, from 8/12/92 through 8/13/92.

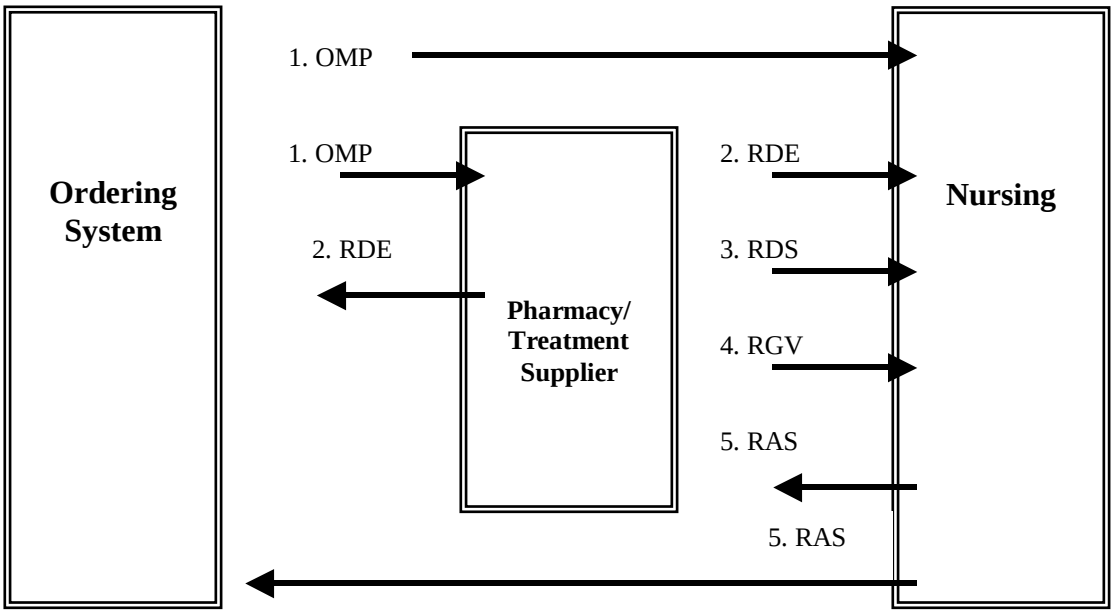
```
MSH|^&~\|||||199208201200||QRY^Q30^QRY_Q01|...<cr>
QRD|19920814172309|R|D|9200543|||100^RD|12345|RGR|...<cr>
QRF|PHM|19920812000000|19920813235959|...<cr>
DSC|...<cr>

MSH|^&~\|||||199208201201||RGR^RGR^RGR_RGR|...<cr>
MSA|AA|1003|...<cr>
QRD|...<cr>
QRF|...<cr>
ORC|RE||R23^RX|...<cr>
RXE|^BID^D5^199208120800^199208162000|10986^AMPICILLIN|250||MG|...<cr>
RXR|PO|...<cr>
RXG|1||^^^199208120701|10986^AMPICILLIN|250|...<cr>
RXG|2||^^^199208121923|10986^AMPICILLIN|250|...<cr>
RXG|3||^^^199208130702|10986^AMPICILLIN|250|...<cr>
RXA|4||^^^199208131912|10986^AMPICILLIN|250|...<cr>
ORC|RE||R76^RX|...<cr>
RXE|^TID^D7^199208120600^199208182200|12796^ASPIRIN|325||MG|...<cr>
RXR|PO|...<cr>
RXG|1||^^^199208120459|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXG|2||^^^199208121328|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXG|3||^^^199208122101|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXG|4||^^^199208130503|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXG|5||^^^199208131311|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
RXG|6||^^^199208132145|12796^ASPIRIN|325|...<cr>
DSC|...<cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.16 PHARMACY/TREATMENT TRANSACTION FLOW DIAGRAM

The following are possible routes at a generic site.



4.16.1 OMP:

The Ordering application generates a pharmacy/treatment OMP) and sends it to the pharmacy or treatment application, Nursing application, and/or other applications as appropriate at the site.

4.16.2 RDE:

The pharmacy/treatment application may send the RDE, the Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order message, a fully encoded order to the Nursing application, Ordering application, and/or other system applications as appropriate at the site.

4.16.3 RDS:

The pharmacy/treatment application may send the RDS, the Pharmacy/Treatment Dispense message, to the Nursing application or other applications as appropriate at the site, each time a medication is dispensed for this order. This message may occur multiple times for each order.

4.16.4 RGV:

The pharmacy application may send the RGV, the Pharmacy/Treatment Give message, to the Nursing application or other applications as appropriate at the site, for each scheduled date/time of administration of a medication for a given order. This message may occur multiple times for each order.

4.16.5 RAS:

The Nursing application (and other applications) can generate the RAS, the pharmacy/treatment Administration Results message, whenever a medication is given to the patient. This message may occur multiple times for each order.

Note: Sites having a long term clinical data repository may wish to route data to the data repository from copies of all or any of the five messages.

4.17 VACCINE TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS

The message header segment will carry one of four event types at *MSH-9-Message Type*:

Event	Description
V01	Query for Vaccination Record
V02	Response to Vaccination Query (V01) Returning Multiple PID Matches
V03	Response to Query (V01) Returning Vaccination Record
V04	Unsolicited Update to Vaccination Record

4.17.1 Vaccine administration data

Immunization registries that maintain vaccination records need to be able to transmit patient-specific records of vaccines administered to other registries to provide access to the record at the time healthcare is given and to allow tracking of progress in reaching age-appropriate immunization coverage. The transmissions will occur as the result of four activities: (1) a query from one system for a patient's vaccination record that is held in another system, (2) a response to a query containing multiple patient matches to the query, (3) a response to a query containing the vaccination record, and (4) an unsolicited update to an immunization registry

These messages permit the transmission of immunization records from care providers to immunization registries, queries of these registries for immunization records, and the return of these immunization records to care providers. Messages containing immunization records carry patient identifying information in the PID segment. They may also carry parent or guardian information in the NK1 segments to help identify a child. The RXA segment is used to report the details of the immunization event: the type of vaccine (e.g., DPT, polio, MMR), the date administered, the sequence (1st, 2nd, etc.), the amount (e.g., 0.5 ml), and location and provider of the immunization. In addition, the RXA provides a place to record the lot number, manufacturer and date of expiration of the immunization. The RXA can also be used to report the fact that a specified immunization was refused. This section includes two tables (0292 and 0227) maintained by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). These tables are recommended in the U.S. for identifying the immunization in field *RXA-5-Administered Code* and the vaccine manufacturer in field *RXA-17-substance manufacturer name*.

4.17.2 Queries for immunization records (QRF Segments)

The VXQ, VXX, and VXR messages defined below incorporate the QRF segment defined at 5.10.5.4, "QRF - original style query filter segment." *QRF-5-other query subject filter* is a locally defined filter for use between two systems which mutually agree on a definition. For transferring vaccination administration data, *QRF-5-other QRY subject filter* should be structured as shown in Figure 4-7 to transmit up to ten separate search "keys." These search keys are only used to identify one patient's immunization record. The message provides for a wide variety of "identifying" keys including mother's and/or father's name and other identifiers; in some cases such information will be needed to identify a specific patient in the immunization database.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

The format of each of the possible "search keys" is given below, and listed in a more structured form in *Figure 4-7*. These keys are transmitted as strings separated by repeat delimiters. The position of the components within *QRF-5-other QRY subject filter* is significant. The requester sends values for all the components that are known.

```
Components:  <patient social security number> ~ <patient birth date> ~ <patient birth
             state> ~ <patient birth registration number> ~ <patient medicaid number> ~
             <mother's name last^first^middle> ~ <mother's maiden name> ~ <mother's
             Social Security number> ~ <father's name last^first^middle> ~ <father's
             Social Security number>
```

Figure 4-7. QRF-5 usage in vaccination messages

Pos	Component	Data Type	Description/Examples
1	Patient Social Security Number~	ST	In U.S., use SSN, without hyphens between 3rd and 4th digits and 5th and 6th digits, e.g., 123456789. In other countries, universal patient ID such as National Health Service number may be used.
2	Patient Birth Date~	DT	July 4, 1976 = 19760704
3	Patient Birth State~	ID	In U.S., use 2-letter postal code, e.g., IN, NY, CA. In other countries, locally applicable postal table may be used.
4	Patient Birth Registration Number~	ST	State birth certificate number
5	Patient Medicaid Number~	ST	When relevant
6	Mother's Name Last^First^Middle~	PN	<family name> ^ <given name> ^ <middle name or initial> ^ <suffix> ^ <prefix> ^ <degree>. E.g., Smith^Mary^Elizabeth
7	Mother's Maiden Name~	ST	Family name of mother before marriage. E.g., Jones
8	Mother's Social Security Number~	ST	In U.S., use SSN, without hyphens between 3rd and 4th digits and 5th and 6th digits, e.g., 123456789. In other countries, universal patient ID such as National Health Service number may be used.
9	Father's Name Last^First^Middle~	PN	<family name> ^ <given name> ^ <middle name or initial> ^ <suffix> ^ <prefix> ^ <degree>. E.g.,Smith^Thomas^A^Jr
10	Father's Social Security Number	ST	In U.S., use SSN, without hyphens between 3rd and 4th digits and 5th and 6th digits, e.g., 123456789. In other countries, universal patient ID such as National Health Service number may be used.

For instance, if the requestor knew only the patient's Social Security number and birthdate, this *QRF-5-other QRY subject filter* would be sent:

```
|908723461~19941005|
```

If, in addition, the patient's birth state and mother's current and maiden name were known, this *QRF-5-other QRY subject filter* would be sent:

```
|908723461~19941005~IN~~~HUTCHINS^KATHY^ANN~HARKNESS|
```

4.17.3 VXQ - Query For Vaccination Record (Event V01)

Definition: When an immunization registry does not already have the complete patient vaccination record, it will send a query (with a V01 event) for the definitive (last updated) record. Within the definitions for QRD and QRF, certain components are defined according to position in the field, as detailed in Section *4.17.2*, "*Queries for immunization records (QRF Segments)*." The three-letter code in the leftmost column indicates the segment that is included; the column on the right specifies the chapter in which that segment is fully defined.

The query will follow this format:

VXQ^V01^VXQ_V01	Vaccination Query	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header Segment		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
QRD	Query Definition Segment		2
[QRF]	Query Filter Segment		2

4.17.4 VXX - RESPONSE TO VACCINATION QUERY RETURNING MULTIPLE PID MATCHES (EVENT V02)

Definition: In response to a query for the definitive patient vaccination record, the registry holding the record will return it to the registry originating the query.

If the query results in multiple "matches," i.e., more than one patient record matches the identifiers in the query so that there is no unique identification, the response to the query (with a V02 event) will follow this format. Within the definitions for QRD and QRF, certain components are defined according to position in the field, as detailed in Section *4.17.2*, "*Queries for immunization records (QRF Segments)*." The three-letter code in the leftmost column indicates the segment that is included; the column on the right specifies the chapter in which that segment is fully defined.

VXX^V02^VXX_V02	Returning Multiple PID Matches	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
QRD	Query Definition		2
[QRF]	Query Filter		2
{	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{ NK1 }]	Next of Kin/Associated Parties		3
}	--- PATIENT end		

4.17.5 VXR - Vaccination Record Response (Event V03)

Definition: When the patient has been uniquely identified (there is only one "match" to the query), the response to the query (with a V03 event) will follow this format. Within the definitions for QRD and QRF, certain components are defined according to position in the field, as detailed in Section *4.17.2*, "*Queries for immunization records (QRF Segments)*." The three-letter code in the leftmost column indicates the segment that is included; the column on the right specifies the chapter in which that segment is fully defined.

VXR^V03^VXR_V03	Vaccination Response	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
QRD	Query Definition		2

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

VXR^V03^VXR_V03	Vaccination Response	Status	Chapter
[QRF]	Query Filter		2
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NK1 }]	Next of Kin/Associated Parties		3
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{ GT1 }]	Guarantor		6
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
RXA	Pharmacy Administration		4
[RXR]	Pharmacy Route		4
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes (Regarding Immunization)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
}]	--- ORDER end		

4.17.6 VXU - Unsolicited Vaccination Record Update (Event V04)

Definition: When a provider wishes to update the patient's vaccination record being held in a registry, he will transmit an unsolicited update of the record (a V04 trigger event).

An unsolicited update will follow this format. The three-letter code in the leftmost column indicates the segment that is included; the column on the right specifies the chapter in which that segment is fully defined.

VXU^V04^VXU_V04	Unsolicited Vaccination Update	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header Segment		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
PID	Patient Identification Segment		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NK1 }]	Next of Kin/Associated Parties		3
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
[{ GT1 }]	Guarantor		6
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
RXA	Pharmacy Administration Segment		4
[RXR]	Pharmacy Route		4
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes (Regarding Immunization)		2
}]	--- OBSERVATION end		
}]	--- ORDER end		

4.18 VACCINE SEGMENTS

4.18.1 RXA - segment usage in vaccine messages

With the exception of *RXA-5-Administered code* and *RXA-17-Substance manufacturer name*, the structure for the RXA segment below is identical to that documented in section 4.14.7. When using the RXA segment for vaccine messages, *HL7 Table 0292- Vaccines Administered*, should be used for RXA-5-

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Administered code, as noted in Section 4.18.1.1. *HL7 Table 0227- Manufacturers of Vaccines*, should be used for *RXA-17- Substance manufacturer name*, as noted in Section 4.18.1.2

HL7 Attribute Table – RXA – Segment Uses in Vaccine Messages

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	NM	R			00342	Give Sub-ID Counter
2	4	NM	R			00344	Administration Sub-ID Counter
3	26	TS	R			00345	Date/Time Start of Administration
4	26	TS	R			00346	Date/Time End of Administration
5	250	CE	R		0292	00347	Administered Code
6	20	NM	R			00348	Administered Amount
7	250	CE	C			00349	Administered Units
8	250	CE	O			00350	Administered Dosage Form
9	250	CE	O	Y		00351	Administration Notes
10	250	XCN	O	Y		00352	Administering Provider
11	200	LA2	C			00353	Administered-at Location
12	20	ST	C			00354	Administered Per (Time Unit)
13	20	NM	O			01134	Administered Strength
14	250	CE	O			01135	Administered Strength Units
15	20	ST	O	Y		01129	Substance Lot Number
16	26	TS	O	Y		01130	Substance Expiration Date
17	250	CE	O	Y	0227	01131	Substance Manufacturer Name
18	250	CE	O	Y		01136	Substance/Treatment Refusal Reason
19	250	CE	O	Y		01123	Indication
20	2	ID	O		0322	01223	Completion Status
21	2	ID	O		0323	01224	Action Code - RXA
22	26	TS	O			01225	System Entry Date/Time

4.18.1.0 RXA field definitions

4.18.1.1 Using RXA-5 in vaccine messages

Use in *RXA-5- administered code* to identify the particular vaccine administered. The codes listed are used by immunization by immunization registries in the U.S. Entries will be added as needed to accommodate international requirements. Refer to *HL7 Table 0292 – Vaccines administered* for valid values.

4.18.1.2 Using RXA-17 in vaccine messages

Use in RXA-17-substance manufacturer name to identify the manufacturer or distributor of the particular vaccine administered. The codes listed are used by immunization registries in the U.S. Entries will be added as needed to accommodate international requirements. Refer to *HL7 Table 0227 – manufacturers of Vaccines* for valid values.

4.19 VACCINATION MESSAGE EXAMPLES

4.19.1 VXQ - query for vaccination record

```
MSH|^~\&||GAVACREC||AZVACREC|199505221605||VXQ^V01^VXQ_V01| ...<cr>

QRD|199505221605|R|I|950522GA40|||1000^RD|^JONES^JOHN^RICHARD|VXI|SIIS|.
    ..<cr>

QRF|AZVACREC||||256946789~19900607~CA~CA99999999~88888888~JONES^MARY^SUE
    ~SMITH~898666725~JONES^MATHEW^LEE~822546618|...<cr>
```

In this query, Georgia Vaccine Records is sending a request to Arizona Vaccine Records for an immunization record. The request is being sent on May 22, 1995, at 4:05 p.m. Identifiers other than patient name are defined in the query by giving positional meaning to the repeat delimiters in the *QRF-5-other query subject filter* field, as specified in Section *4.17.2*, "*Queries for immunization records (QRF Segments)*." The responding system is expected to return all query items in their response. The QRD segment, at *QRD-8-who subject filter*, identifies the patient name. *QRD-9-what subject filter* reflects the new VXI category of Vaccination Information. *QRD-10-what department data code* shows SIIS.

In our example, we are sending a query for the record of John Richard Jones. The patient's Social Security number is 256-94-6789; the patient birth date is June 7, 1990; the patient birth state is CA; the patient birth registration number is CA99999999; and the patient Medicaid number is 88888888. The patient's mother is Mary Sue Jones, whose maiden name is Smith. Her Social Security number is 898-66-6725. The patient's father is Mathew Lee Jones, and the father's Social Security number is 822-54-6618.

4.19.2 VXX - response to vaccination query with multiple PID matches

```
MSH|^~\&||AZVACREC||GAVACREC|199505221606||VXX^V02^VXX_V02|...<cr>

MSA|...<cr>

QRD|199505221605|R|I|950522GA40|||1000^RD|^JONES^RICHARD|VXI|SIIS|...<cr
    >

QRF|AZVACREC||||~~~~~JONES^MARY|...<cr>

PID|1||123456789^^^AZ||^JONES^RICHARD^ROBERT||19910607|M^MALE^HL70001|..
    .<cr>

NK1|1|JONES^MARY^SUE|MTH^MOTHER^HL70063|||||||||||||||||||||||||||||265
    909900^^^^SS|...<cr>

PID|2||987654321^^^AZ||^JONES^JOHN^RICHARD||19900607|M^MALE^HL70001|...<
    cr>

NK1|1|JONES^MARY|MTH^MOTHER^HL70063|||||||||||||||||||||||||||||8986667
    25^^^^SS|...<cr>

NK1|2|JONES^MATHEW^LEE|FTH^FATHER^HL70063|||||||||||||||||||||||||||||8
    22546618^^^^SS|...<cr>

PID|3||231453675^^^AZ||^JONES^RICHARD^CURTIS||19901225|M^MALE^HL70001|..
    .<cr>

NK1|1|JONES^MARY^ANN|MTH^MOTHER^HL70063|||||||||||||||||||||||||||||288
    763102^^^^SS|...<cr>

PID|4||908786564^^^AZ||^JONES^RICHARD^ALAN||19870205|M^MALE^HL70001|...<
    cr>

NK1|1|JONES^MARY^SUE|MTH^MOTHER^HL70063|||||||||||||||||||||||||||||190
    966725^^^^SS|...<cr>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
NK1|2|JONES^CHRISTOPHER|FTH^FATHER^HL70063|||||||||||||||||||||||||||||
    786118768^^^^SS|...<cr>
```

The example shows the response when multiple PIDs match a query. In the QRD, the sender is querying Arizona Vaccine Records for information on Richard Jones; the only further identifying information supplied in the QRF is that the mother's name is Mary Jones. For each record which matches this information, a PID is returned along with its associated NK1. The system initiating the query may then re-send a more precise query.

4.19.3 VXR - vaccination record response

```
MSH|^~\&||AZVACREC||GAVACREC|199505221606||VXR^V03^VXR_V03|...<cr>

MSA|...<cr>

QRD|...<cr>

QRF|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

NK1|1|JONES^MARY^SUE|MTH^MOTHER^HL70063|||||||||||||||||||||||||||||898
    666725^^^^SS|...<cr>

NK1|2|JONES^MATHEW^LEE|FTH^FATHER^HL70063|||||||||||||||||||||||||||||8
    22546618^^^^SS|...<cr>

ORC|RE||V43^AZVAC|...<cr>

RXA|0|4|19910607|19910607|01^DTP^CVX|.5|MG^^ISO+|||1234567891^GOLDSTEIN^
    HAROLD^A^^DR|

      ^^^CHILD HEALTHCARE CLINIC^^^^^101 MAIN
    STREET^^METROPOLIS^AZ||||W46932777|19910813|

     SKB^SmithKline Beecham^MVX|...<cr>ORC|RE||V44^AZVAC|...<cr>

RXA|0|1|19910607|19910607|03^MMR^CVX|.5|MG^^ISO+|||1234567891^GOLDSTEIN^
    HAROLD^A^^DR|

      ^^^CHILD HEALTHCARE CLINIC^^^^^101 MAIN
    STREET^^METROPOLIS^AZ||||W23487909876456|

     19910725|MSD^Merck \T\ Co., Inc.^MVX|...<cr>

ORC|RE||V87^AZVAC|...<cr>

RXA|0|5|19950520|19950520|01^DTP^CVX|.5|MG^^ISO+|||1234567891^GOLDSTEIN^
    HAROLD^A^^DR|

      ^^^CHILD HEALTHCARE CLINIC^^^^^101 MAIN
    STREET^^METROPOLIS^AZ||||W22532806|19950705|

     SKB^SmithKline Beecham^MVX|...<cr>

ORC|RE||V88^AZVAC|...<cr>

RXA|0|2|19950520|19950520|03^MMR^CVX|.5|MG^^ISO+|||1234567891^GOLDSTEIN^
    HAROLD^A^^DR|

      ^^^CHILD HEALTHCARE CLINIC^^^^^101 MAIN
    STREET^^METROPOLIS^AZ||||W2341234567|19950630|

     MSD^Merck \T\ Co., Inc.^MVX|...<cr>
```

The example reflects a vaccination record return as might be expected by a public health agency reporting from one immunization registry to another. It shows repeating RXA segments reporting the first and second doses of MMR and the fourth and fifth doses of DTP, including the manufacturer, lot number, and

expiration date. If the vaccination had been refused by the patient or guardian, *RXA-18-substance refusal reason* would record the vaccine refusal reason, utilizing a user-defined table.

4.19.4 VXU - unsolicited vaccination record update

```
MSH|^~\&||AZVACREC||GAVACREC|199505221606||VXU^V04^VXU_V04|...<cr>

PID|...<cr>

NK1|...<cr>

NK1|...<cr>

PV1|...<cr>

PV2|...<cr>

IN1|...<cr>

IN2||||||JONES^ALICE^P|909686637A|...<cr>

ORC|...<cr>

RXA|0|1|19950901115500|19950901115500|03^MMR^CVX|.5|MG^^ISO+|||

    1234567891^GOLDSTEIN^HAROLD^A^^DR| ^^^ CHILD HEALTHCARE
   CLINIC^^^^^101 MAIN  STREET^
   ^METROPOLIS^AZ|||W23487909876456|19951125|MSD^Merck \T\ Co.,
   Inc.^MVX|...<cr>

RXR|IM^INTRAMUSCULAR^HL70162|LG^LEFT GLUTEUS MEDIUS^HL70163|...<cr>

OBX|1|NM|1000.3^TEMP.RECTAL^AS4||102.9|DEGF^^ANSI+|||||F|||1995090115300
   0|...<cr>

NTE|||PATIENT DEVELOPED HIGH FEVER APPROX 3 HRS AFTER VACCINE INJECTION.
   PROBABLE ADVERSE REACTION|...<cr>
```

This message shows an unsolicited update of a vaccination record. The message type is VXU--Unsolicited Vaccination Record Update, with event code V04 (unsolicited vaccination record update). This example is given to show possible uses for some of the optional segments in the message.

4.19.5 Query acknowledgment with no records found

```
MSH|^~\&||AZVACREC||GAVACREC|19950522130550^S||DSR^Q01^DSR_Q01|...<cr>

MSA|AA|950522GA40|...<cr>

QAK||NF|...<cr>

QRD|...<cr>
```

The example shows the response to a query which was successfully processed, but no qualifying data were found.

4.20 TRANSFUSION SERVICE (BLOOD BANK) TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGES

4.20.1 Usage notes for transfusion service messages

4.20.2 OMB – Blood Product Order Message (Event O27)

Blood product order messages present the need for additional information that is not included in standard HL7 order messages. Order messages must contain accompanying details regarding the blood product component, such as special processing requirements (e.g. irradiation and leukoreduction), and the amount of the blood product to be

 Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

administered. Additionally, specific relevant clinical information can be included to allow the prospective review of the appropriateness of the blood product order

Blood product orders use the OMB message with the BPO segment for the detail segment and the acknowledgment message, ORB as described below.

OMB^O27^OMB_O27	Blood Product Order Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
[{	--- INSURANCE begin		
IN1	Insurance		6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info		6
[IN3]	Insurance Add'l Info - Cert.		6
}]	--- INSURANCE end		
[GT1]	Guarantor		6
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information		3
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
BPO	Blood Product Order		4
[SPM]	Specimen		7
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Order)		2
[{ DG1 }]	Diagnosis		6
[{	--- OBSERVATION begin		
OBX	Observation/Result		7

OMB^O27^OMB_O27	Blood Product Order Message	Status	Chapter
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Results)		2
}]	--- OMSERVATION end		
[{ FT1 }]	Financial Transaction		6
[BLG]	Billing Segment		6
}	--- ORDER end		

4.20.2.0 OMB use notes

The NTE segment(s) can be included in the OMB message in four places; in each place the NTE refers to the segment that it follows. In particular, the NTEs following the MSH refer only to the message header; the NTEs following the blood product order segment apply to the service defined by that ORC and blood product order segment.

The PID segment is required if and only if new orders are being entered and they are related to a particular patient. For non-patient-related orders the PID segment is never included.

The optional PV1 segment is present mainly to permit transmission of patient visit information such as current location with an order.

4.20.3 ORB – Blood Product Order Acknowledgment (Event O28)

ORB^O28^ORB_O28	Description	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Response Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[BPO]	Blood Product Order		4
}]	--- ORDER end		
]	--- PATIENT end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.20.4 BPS – Blood Product Dispense Status Message (Event O29)

In the pre-transfusion processing of blood products, it is necessary for the transfusion service and the placer system to communicate information that is not included in the current HL7 order/observation model. Examples of pre-transfusion processing include performing a crossmatch test to ensure compatibility with the patient, or irradiation of the blood product due to a special transfusion requirement for the patient. The blood product dispense status messages need to contain additional information regarding the blood products requested, such as the Donation ID, product code, blood type, expiration date/time and current status of the blood product.

In the processing of commercial blood products, such as Rh Immune Globulin, Factor Concentrate, or Albumin Products, the status messages need to contain additional information, such as the lot number and manufacturer, expiration date and status of the commercial product.

Blood product dispense status messages use the BPS and BRP messages as described below.

BPS^O29^BPS_O29	Blood Product dispense status Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
BPO	Blood Product Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for BPO)		2
[{	--- PRODUCT begin		
BPX	Blood Product Dispense Status		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for BPX)		2
}]	--- PRODUCT end		

BPS^O29^BPS_O29	Blood Product dispense status Message	Status	Chapter
}	--- ORDER end		

4.20.5 BRP – Blood Product Dispense Status Acknowledgment (Event O30)

BRP^O30^BRP_O30	Description	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Response Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
[BPO]	Blood Product Order		4
[{ BPX }]	Blood Product dispense status		
}]	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.20.6 BTS – Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Message (Event O31)

Blood product transfusion/disposition messages use the BTS and BRT messages as described below.

BTS^O31^BTS_O31	Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Message	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Header)		2
[	--- PATIENT begin		
PID	Patient Identification		3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics		3
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)		2

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

BTS^O31^BTS_O31	Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Message	Status	Chapter
[	--- PATIENT_VISIT begin		
PV1	Patient Visit		3
[PV2]	Patient Visit – Additional Info		3
]	--- PATIENT_VISIT end		
]	--- PATIENT end		
{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4
}]	--- TIMING end		
BPO	Blood Product Order		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for BPO)		2
[{	--- PRODUCT_STATUS begin		
BTX	Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Status		4
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for BTX)		2
}]	--- PRODUCT_STATUS end		
}	--- ORDER end		

4.20.7 BRT – Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Acknowledgment (Event O32)

BRT^O32^BRT_O32	Description	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2
[{ SFT }]	Software		2
[{ NTE }]	Notes and Comments (for Response Header)		2
[	--- RESPONSE begin		
[PID]	Patient Identification		3
[{	--- ORDER begin		
ORC	Common Order		4
[{	--- TIMING begin		
TQ1	Timing/Quantity		4
[{ TQ2 }]	Timing/Quantity Order Sequence		4

BRT^O32^BRT_O32	Description	Status	Chapter
}]	--- TIMING end		
[BPO]	Blood Product Order		4
[{ BTX }]	Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Status		4
}]	--- ORDER end		
]	--- RESPONSE end		

4.21 TRANSFUSION SERVICE (BLOOD BANK) SEGMENTS

4.21.1 BPO – Blood Product Order Segment

Blood product order messages require additional information that is not available in other standard HL7 order messages. Blood product order messages need to contain accompanying details regarding the blood product component, such as special processing requirements (e.g. irradiation and leukoreduction) and the amount of the blood product to be administered.

The following table presents various use cases surrounding blood product orders.

Universal Service ID [ISBT-128 Product Code]	Blood Product Processing Requirements	Quantity	Blood Product Amount	Units
002^Red Blood Cells	Leukoreduced	2		Ml
002^Red Blood Cells	Leukoreduced	1	60	Ml
002^Red Blood Cells	Irradiated	2	15	Ml
002^Red Blood Cells	Leukoreduced	1		
020^Platelets	Leukoreduced Irradiated	6		
024^ Apheresis Platelets	Irradiated	1		
002^Red Blood Cells		1		
Factor VIII		2	910	IU

HL7 Attribute Table – BPO – Blood product order

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	R			01700	Set ID – BPO
2	250	CWE	R			01701	BP Universal Service ID
3	250	CWE	O	Y	0508	01702	BP Processing Requirements
4	5	NM	R			01703	BP Quantity
5	5	NM	O			01704	BP Amount
6	250	CE	O			01705	BP Units
7	26	TS	O			01706	BP Intended Use Date/Time

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
8	80	PL	O			01707	BP Intended Dispense From Location
9	250	XAD	O			01708	BP Intended Dispense From Address
10	26	TS	O			01709	BP Requested Dispense Date/Time
11	80	PL	O			01710	BP Requested Dispense To Location
12	250	XAD	O			01711	BP Requested Dispense To Address
13	250	CWE	O	Y	0509	01712	BP Indication for Use
14	1	ID	O		0136	01713	BP Informed Consent Indicator

4.21.1.0 BPO field definitions

4.21.1.1 BPO-1 Set ID – BPO (SI) 01700

Definition: This field contains the sequence number for the BPO segment within the message. For the first order transmitted, the sequence number shall be 1; for the second order, it shall be 2; and so on.

4.21.1.2 BPO-2 BP Universal Service Identifier (CWE) 01701

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identifier code for the requested blood product. This can be based on local and/or "universal" codes. We recommend the "universal" procedure identifier. The structure of this CWE data type is described in the control section. The preferred coding system is the *ISBT 128 Product Code.*

Blood Product Orders for commercial products, such as Rh Immune Globulin or Factor VIII concentrate, are not at this time defined in an international or national coding system as are blood products. Therefore, locally defined codes can be used for the Universal Service Identifier for commercial products.

4.21.1.3 BPO-3 BP Processing Requirements (CWE) 01702

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains additional information about the blood component class associated with the Universal Service ID. The placer of the order can specify any required processing of the blood product that must be completed prior to transfusion to the intended recipient. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0508 - Blood Product Processing Requirements* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0508 - Blood Product Processing Requirements

Value	Description	Comment
LR	Leukoreduced	
IR	Irradiated	
CS	CMV Safe	
FR	Fresh unit	
AU	Autologous Unit	
DI	Directed Unit	

Value	Description	Comment
HL	HLA Matched	
CM	CMV Negative	
HB	Hemoglobin S Negative	
WA	Washed	
IG	IgA Deficient	

4.21.1.4 BPO-4 BP Quantity (NM) 01703

Definition: This field contains the number of blood products ordered.

4.21.1.5 BPO-5 BP Amount (NM) 01704

Definition: This field contains the ordered amount (volume) associated with each quantity of blood product.

4.21.1.6 BPO-6 BP Units (CE) 01705

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units of measure for the blood product amount. (See Chapter 7 for more details about reporting units.) This field specifies the units of measure for volume of a blood component (i.e. 50 ml) or the units of measure or dosage of a commercial product (i.e. 910 I.U. - International Units - of Factor VIII Concentrate).

4.21.1.7 BPO-7 BP Intended Use Date/Time (TS) 01706

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the date/time that the placer intends to use the blood product that is being ordered.

This is the time when the placer expects the product to be available within the transfusion service. For example, the product should be available for use, but not dispensed on this date/time.

4.21.1.8 BPO-8 BP Intended Dispense From Location (PL) 01707

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
             <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Person Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
             <Floor (IS)> ^ <Location Description (ST)> ^ <Comprehensive Location
             Identifier (EI)> ^ <Assigning Authority for Location (HD)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Comprehensive Location Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
             <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority for Location (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> &
             <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the location from which the blood component is to be dispensed.

4.21.1.9 BPO-9 BP Intended Dispense From Address (XAD) 01708

```
Components:  <Street Address (SAD)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City (ST)> ^ <State
             or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country (ID)> ^ <Address
             Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation (ST)> ^ <County/Parish Code
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
(IS)> ^ <Census Tract (IS)> ^ <Address Representation Code (ID)> ^
<DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^
<Expiration Date (TS)>

Subcomponents for Street Address (SAD):  <Street or Mailing Address (ST)> & <Street
Name (ST)> & <Dwelling Number (ST)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time
(TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
(ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the actual address of the location from which the blood component is to be dispensed.

4.21.1.10 BPO-10 BP Requested Dispense Date/Time (TS) 01709

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the date/time that the requested blood products must be ready to dispense. This date/time may be different from the Intended use date/time. For example, the patient may be scheduled to come in for a transfusion at a specified time. However, the placer would request that the blood product be ready to dispense prior to that time in order to have the blood component ready for transfusion at the scheduled time. The field may also be used to indicate that the placer is now ready to pick up the ordered blood product and is requesting the blood product be ready to dispense at that time.

4.21.1.11 BPO-11 BP Requested Dispense to Location (PL) 01710

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
<Location Status (IS)> ^ <Person Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
<Floor (IS)> ^ <Location Description (ST)> ^ <Comprehensive Location
Identifier (EI)> ^ <Assigning Authority for Location (HD)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
<Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Comprehensive Location Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
<Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority for Location (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> &
<Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the inpatient or outpatient location to which the blood component is to be dispensed. The default dispense to location is the current census location for the patient.

4.21.1.12 BPO-12 BP Requested Dispense to Address (XAD) 01711

```
Components:  <Street Address (SAD)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City (ST)> ^ <State
or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country (ID)> ^ <Address
Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation (ST)> ^ <County/Parish Code
(IS)> ^ <Census Tract (IS)> ^ <Address Representation Code (ID)> ^
<DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^
<Expiration Date (TS)>

Subcomponents for Street Address (SAD):  <Street or Mailing Address (ST)> & <Street
Name (ST)> & <Dwelling Number (ST)>
```

```
Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time
          (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

          Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the actual address of the location to which the blood component is to be dispensed. The default dispense to location is the current census location for the patient.

4.21.1.13 BPO-13 BP Indication for Use (CWE) 01712

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
          <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
          Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This is a coded optional field. The value indicates the reason that the blood product was ordered. This information is helpful for prospective review or retrospective studies of blood product ordering practices of the ordering provider by the Quality Assurance Department and/ or Transfusion Committee. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0509 - Indication For Use* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0509 – Indication For Use

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

4.21.1.14 BPO-14 BP Informed Consent Indicator (ID) 01713

This field indicates whether consent for the transfusion has been obtained. Refer to *HL7 table 0136 -Yes/no indicator* as defined in Chapter 2.

4.21.2 BPX – Blood Product Dispense Status Segment

In the processing of blood products, it is necessary for the transfusion service and the placer system to communicate information. The status messages need to contain additional information regarding the blood products requested, such as the unique donation ID, product code, blood type, expiration date/time of the blood product, and current status of the product. This segment is similar to an OBX segment, but contains additional attributes.

HL7 Attribute Table – BPX – Blood product dispense status

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	R			01714	Set ID – BPX
2	250	CWE	R		0510	01715	BP Dispense Status
3	1	ID	R		0511	01716	BP Status
4	26	TS	R			01717	BP Date/Time of Status
5	22	EI	C			01718	BC Donation ID
6	250	CNE	C			01719	BC Component

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
7	250	CNE	O			01720	BC Donation Type / Intended Use
8	250	CWE	C		0512	01721	CP Commercial Product
9	250	XON	C			01722	CP Manufacturer
10	22	EI	C			01723	CP Lot Number
11	250	CNE	O			01724	BP Blood Group
12	250	CNE	O	Y		01725	BC Special Testing
13	26	TS	O			01726	BP Expiration Date/Time
14	5	NM	R			01727	BP Quantity
15	5	NM	O			01728	BP Amount
16	250	CE	O			01729	BP Units
17	22	EI	O			01730	BP Unique ID
18	80	PL	O			01731	BP Actual Dispensed To Location
19	250	XAD	O			01732	BP Actual Dispensed To Address
20	250	XCN	O			01733	BP Dispensed to Receiver
21	250	XCN	O			01734	BP Dispensing Individual

4.21.2.0 BPX field definitions

The BP prefix in the element name indicates that the attribute pertains to any type of blood product. A blood product is defined as any type of blood component or commercially prepared blood product that is prepared and dispensed from the transfusion service.

The BC prefix in the element name indicates that the attribute pertains only to blood components. A blood component is defined as the whole or any part of a blood donation. For example, from one whole blood donation, the unit of whole blood can be fractionated into red blood cells, plasma and platelets with each component contained in separate bags. These types of blood products are assigned a unique donation identification number as well as a product code that indicates the type of component contained in the bag.

The CP prefix in the element name indicates that the attribute pertains only to Commercial Products. A commercial product is defined as a commercially manufactured product, such as blood derivatives (Rh Immune Globulin, Factor VIII Concentrate or Blood Recipient Sets or Filters). These types of products are tracked by manufacturer and lot number and are not necessarily assigned a unique donation number.

4.21.2.1 BPX-1 Set ID – BPX (SI) 01714

Definition: This field contains the sequence number for the BPX segment under the related BPO segment. For the first blood product dispense status transmitted, the sequence number shall be 1; for the second product dispense status, it shall be 2; and so on.

4.21.2.2 BPX-2 BP Dispense Status (CWE) 01715

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the current status of the specified blood product as indicated by the filler or placer. For example, the first status change of a product that may trigger a Blood Product Dispense Status Message occurs when it first becomes linked to a patient and is ready to dispense. The placer system may use the Blood Product Dispense Status Message to request the transfusion service to dispense the product. When the blood product is delivered or issued to a patient, the status of the blood product would be changed to indicate that it has now been "dispensed." Refer to *HL7 Table 0510 - Blood Product Dispense Status* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0510 - Blood Product Dispense Status

Value	Description	Comment
RI	Received into inventory (for specified patient)	Status determined by Filler
RD	Reserved and ready to dispense	Status determined by Filler
RS	Reserved (ordered and product allocated for the patient)	Status determined by Filler
RE	Released (no longer allocated for the patient)	Status determined by Placer or Filler
DS	Dispensed to patient location	Status determined by Filler
RA	Returned unused/no longer needed	Status determined by Filler
RL	Returned unused/keep linked to patient for possible use later	Status determined by Filler
WA	Wasted (product no longer viable)	Status determined by Filler
PT	Presumed transfused (dispensed and not returned)	Status determined by Filler
CR	Released into inventory for general availability	Status determined by Filler
RQ	Request to dispense blood product	Status determined by Placer

4.21.2.3 BPX-3 BP Status (ID) 01716

Definition: The most commonly used message status values in a BPX will be preliminary and final. A status is considered preliminary until a blood product has reached a final disposition for the patient. For example, when the product is first cross-matched and a status message is sent, it would be considered preliminary. When the product is dispensed to the patient, that status would also be considered preliminary. However, once the product is transfused, the status would be considered final. The status of a blood product (BPX-2) can continue to change and the previous status should be overwritten until it reaches a final status (BPX-3). Refer to *HL7 Table 0511 - BP Observation Status Codes Interpretation* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0511 - BP Observation Status Codes Interpretation

Value	Description	Comment
C	Record coming over is a correction and thus replaces a final status	
D	Deletes the BPX record	
F	Final status; Can only be changed with a corrected status	
O	Order detail description only (no status)	
P	Preliminary status	
W	Post original as wrong, e.g., transmitted for wrong patient	

4.21.2.4 BPX-4 BP Date/Time of Status (TS) 01717

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the date and time that the status of the blood component was changed. For example, if the blood component had a status, of "RD" (Ready to Dispense), the date and time in this field would indicate the date and time that component was made ready to dispense by the filler system.

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.21.2.5 BPX-5 BC Donation ID (EI) 01718

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: The Donation ID is the unique identification number assigned to a blood donation. The Donation ID depends upon the bar code labeling system used for the component. There are currently two blood component labeling standards: *ABC CODABAR* and *ISBT 128*. The preferred labeling system is *ISBT 128*. If using *ISBT 128*, the Donation ID is an internationally unique identifier consisting of the following 13 characters:

Country Code & Collection Facility - 5 characters

Donation Year - 2 characters

Serial Number - 6 characters

This field is required for blood components and is not applicable for commercial product messages.

4.21.2.6 BPX-6 BC Component (CNE) 01719

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: The Component field includes an identifier and description of the specific blood component.

The identifier consists of a numeric or alphanumeric product code that represents the type of blood component. The coding system will be determined by the bar code labeling system on the particular component of blood. The preferred coding system is *ISBT 128*.

If using *ISBT 128* labeling standard, the product code will consist of an 8-character alphanumeric code, starting with an alpha character and including the component class, donation type/intended use and division indicator.

If using CODABAR product labeling standard, the product code is a 5-digit number.

This field is required for blood components and is not applicable for commercial product messages.

4.21.2.7 BPX-7 BC Donation Type / Intended Use (CNE) 01720

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the type of donation or collection/intended use. This value is populated from *Table 5 -Type of Donation in the ISBT 128 Application Specification*. The default value is "0", meaning "Not specified." Other values indicate whether the blood product (1) is an allogeneic unit from a volunteer donor, (2) is intended for a specific recipient but may be crossed over and used for another recipient, or (3) is an autologous donation intended only for that particular recipient.

This field is optional for blood component messages and is not applicable for commercial product messages.

4.21.2.8 BPX-8 CP Commercial Product (CWE) 01721

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the code and/or text to identify a commercial product. Examples of commercial products are blood derivatives such as Rh Immune Globulin and Factor VIII concentrate, Leukoreduction filters, and blood administration sets.

Either code and/or text may be absent. However, the code is always placed in the first component position and any free text in the second component. Thus, a component delimiter must precede free text without a code. Free text can be utilized if no update is to occur. Refer To *User-Defined Table 0512 - Commercial Product* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0512 – Commercial Product

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

This field is required for commercial blood products and is not applicable for blood component messages.

4.21.2.9 BPX-9 CP Manufacturer (XON) 01722

```
Components:  <Organization Name (ST)> ^ <Organization Name Type Code (IS)> ^
             <DEPRECATED-ID Number (NM)> ^ <Check Digit (NM)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme
             (ID)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^
             <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^
             <Organization Identifier (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the manufacturer of the commercial product. The manufacturer may be different from the supplier of the commercial product.

This field is required for commercial blood products and is not applicable for blood component messages.

4.21.2.10 BPX-10 CP Lot Number (EI) 01723

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the lot number for blood derivatives or commercially supplied items used as accessories to transfusion.

This field is required for commercial blood products and is not applicable for blood component messages.

4.21.2.11 BPX-11 BP Blood Group (CNE) 01724

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Definition: This field indicates the ABO/Rh blood group of the blood component. The preferred values for the blood group are the specified values in *Table 3A - Encodation of ABO/Rh Blood Group* in the *ISBT 128 Application Specification*.

This field is required for blood components and certain commercial products (such as solvent detergent plasma).

4.21.2.12 BPX-12 BC Special Testing (CNE) 01725

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This is a repeating field to allow multiple entries for special testing that was performed on the blood component. The preferred coding system for Special Testing is defined in the *ISBT 128 Application Specification*. Proposals have been developed and will soon be published by ICCBBA, Inc. for the encodation of other antigen and antibody specificities, including HLA, platelet, red cell and other types of markers.

This field is optional for blood component messages. It is not applicable for non-commercial product messages.

Refer to *Table I3 - Special Testing Codes* of the *ISBT 128 Application Specification*.

4.21.2.13 BPX-13 BP Expiration Date/Time (TS) 01726

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field specifies the date and time that the blood product expires. The blood product is no longer considered acceptable once the expiration date has been reached unless cleared by the transfusion service medical staff.

This field applies to blood components as well as commercial products. There are a few commercial products that have no expiration date. Therefore, the field is not required for those specific products.

4.21.2.14 BPX-14 BP Quantity (NM) 01727

Definition: This field indicates the number of blood components or commercial products to which this message refers.

4.21.2.15 BPX-15 BP Amount (NM) 01728

Definition: This field contains the ordered amount (volume) associated with each quantity of a blood component or commercial product to which this message refers.

4.21.2.16 BPX-16 BP Units (CE) 01729

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units of measure for the blood product amount. (See Chapter 7 for more details about reporting units.) This field specifies the units of measure for volume of a blood component (i.e. 50 ml) or the units of measure or dosage of a commercial product (i.e. 910 I.U. - International Units - of Factor VIII Concentrate).

4.21.2.17 BPX-17 BP Unique ID (EI) 01730

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is a unique system-generated number assigned to the blood product to which the message is referring. Each time the status is updated, the new message should replace the previous message if the Blood Product Unique ID is the same. If the Blood Product Unique ID is different, it indicates that the status applies to a different blood product.

The sending and receiving systems must agree upon the use of this field.

4.21.2.18 BPX-18 BP Actual Dispensed to Location (PL) 01731

```
Components:  <Point of Care (IS)> ^ <Room (IS)> ^ <Bed (IS)> ^ <Facility (HD)> ^
             <Location Status (IS)> ^ <Person Location Type (IS)> ^ <Building (IS)> ^
             <Floor (IS)> ^ <Location Description (ST)> ^ <Comprehensive Location
             Identifier (EI)> ^ <Assigning Authority for Location (HD)>

Subcomponents for Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> &
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Comprehensive Location Identifier (EI):  <Entity Identifier (ST)> &
             <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority for Location (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> &
             <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the inpatient or outpatient location to which the blood product was actually dispensed. The default value is the current census location for the patient.

4.21.2.19 BPX-19 BP Actual Dispensed to Address (XAD) 01732

```
Components:  <Street Address (SAD)> ^ <Other Designation (ST)> ^ <City (ST)> ^ <State
             or Province (ST)> ^ <Zip or Postal Code (ST)> ^ <Country (ID)> ^ <Address
             Type (ID)> ^ <Other Geographic Designation (ST)> ^ <County/Parish Code
             (IS)> ^ <Census Tract (IS)> ^ <Address Representation Code (ID)> ^
             <DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^
             <Expiration Date (TS)>

Subcomponents for Street Address (SAD):  <Street or Mailing Address (ST)> & <Street
             Name (ST)> & <Dwelling Number (ST)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Address Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time
             (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
             (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
             Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the actual address of the location to which the blood product was actually dispensed.

4.21.2.20 BPX-20 BP Dispensed to Receiver (XCN) 01733

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
             Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
             (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

<Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^ <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^ <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN): <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR): <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>

Definition: This is the person who picked up and transported the blood component(s) or commercial product(s). The code for the receiver is recorded as a XCN data type. This field can be free text. In this case, the receiver's name must be recorded as the second through fourth components of the field.

4.21.2.21 BPX-21 BP Dispensing Individual (XCN) 01734

Components: <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^ <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^ <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^ <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN): <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From Partner/Spouse (ST)>

```
Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
          Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
          & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
          <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

          Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
          (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS):  <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
          Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
          <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate
          Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
          Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
          Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
          (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
          <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
          <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the individual who is dispensing the blood component or commercial product.

4.21.3 BTX – Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Segment

HL7 Attribute Table – BTX – Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	R			01735	Set ID – BTX
2	22	EI	C			01736	BC Donation ID
3	250	CNE	C			01737	BC Component
4	250	CNE	C			01738	BC Blood Group
5	250	CWE	C		0512	01739	CP Commercial Product
6	250	XON	C			01740	CP Manufacturer
7	22	EI	C			01741	CP Lot Number
8	5	NM	R			01742	BP Quantity
9	5	NM	O			01743	BP Amount
10	250	CE	O			01744	BP Units
11	250	CWE	R		0513	01745	BP Transfusion/Disposition Status
12	1	ID	R		0511	01746	BP Message Status
13	26	TS	R			01747	BP Date/Time of Status

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
14	250	XCN	O			01748	BP Administrator
15	250	XCN	O			01749	BP Verifier
16	26	TS	O			01750	BP Transfusion Start Date/Time of Status
17	26	TS	O			01751	BP Transfusion End Date/Time of Status
18	250	CWE	O	Y	0514	01752	BP Adverse Reaction Type
19	250	CWE	O		0515	01753	BP Transfusion Interrupted Reason

4.21.3.0 BTX field definitions

The BP prefix in the element name indicates that the attribute pertains to any type of blood product. A blood product is defined as any type of blood component or commercially prepared blood product that is prepared and dispensed from the transfusion service.

The BC prefix in the element name indicates that the attribute pertains only to blood components. A blood component is defined as any part or all of a whole blood donation. For example, from one whole blood donation, the unit of whole blood can be fractionated into red blood cells, plasma and platelets with each component contained in separate bags. These types of blood products are always assigned a unique donation identification number as well as a product code that indicates the type of component contained in the bag.

The CP prefix in the element name indicates that the attribute pertains only to Commercial Products. A commercial product is defined as a commercially manufactured product, such as blood derivatives (Rh Immune Globulin, Factor VIII Concentrate or Blood Recipient Sets or Filters). These types of products are tracked by manufacturer and lot number and are not necessarily assigned a unique donation number.

4.21.3.1 BTX-1 Set ID – BTX (SI) 01735

Definition: This field contains the sequence number for the BTX segment under the related BPO segment. For the first product transfusion/disposition transmitted, the sequence number shall be 1; for the second product transfusion/disposition, it shall be 2; and so on.

4.21.3.2 BTX-2 BC Donation ID (EI) 01736

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
             <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: The donation ID is the unique identification number assigned to a blood donation. The Donation ID depends upon the bar code labeling system used for the component. There are currently two blood component labeling standards: *ABC CODABAR* and *ISBT 128*. The preferred labeling system is *ISBT 128*. If using *ISBT 128,* the Donation ID is an internationally unique identifier consisting of the following 13 characters:

Country Code & Collection Facility - 5 characters

Donation Year - 2 characters

Serial Number - 6 characters

This is required for blood components and is not applicable for commercial product messages.

4.21.3.3 BTX-3 BC Component (CNE) 01737

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
```

```
Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: The Blood Component field includes an identifier and description of the specific blood component.

The identifier consists of a numeric or alphanumeric product code that represents the type of blood component. The coding system will be determined by the bar code labeling system on the particular component of blood. The preferred coding system is *ISBT 128*.

If using *ISBT 128* labeling standard, the product code will consist of an 8-character alphanumeric code, starting with an alpha character and including the component class, donation type/intended use and division indicator.

If using CODABAR product labeling standard, the product code is a 5-digit number.

This field is required for blood components and is not applicable for commercial product messages.

4.21.3.4 BTX-4 BC Blood Group (CNE) 01738

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
           <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
           Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
           System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the ABO/Rh blood group of the blood component. The preferred values for the blood group are the specified values in *Table 3A - Encodation of ABO/Rh Blood Group* in the *ISBT 128 Application Specification*.

This field is required for blood components and certain commercial products (such as solvent detergent plasma).

4.21.3.5 BTX-5 CP Commercial Product (CWE) 01739

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
           <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
           Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
           System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the code and/or text to identify a commercial product. Examples of commercial products are blood derivatives such as Rh Immune Globulin and Factor VIII concentrate, Leukoreduction filters, and blood administration sets.

Either code and/or text may be absent. However, the code is always placed in the first component position and any free text in the second component. Thus, free text without a code must be preceded by a component delimiter. Free text can be utilized if no update is to occur. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0512 - Commercial Product* for suggested values.

This field is required for commercial blood products and is not applicable to blood component messages.

4.21.3.6 BTX-6 CP Manufacturer (XON) 01740

```
Components:  <Organization Name (ST)> ^ <Organization Name Type Code (IS)> ^
           <DEPRECATED-ID Number (NM)> ^ <Check Digit (NM)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme
           (ID)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^
           <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^
           <Organization Identifier (ST)>
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

```
Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
          & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the manufacturer of the commercial product. The manufacturer may not be the same as the supplier of the commercial product.

This field is required for commercial blood products and is not applicable for blood component messages.

4.21.3.7 BTX-7 CP Lot Number (EI) 01741

```
Components:  <Entity Identifier (ST)> ^ <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^
          <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the lot number for blood derivatives or commercially supplied items used as accessories to transfusion.

This field is required for commercial blood products and is not applicable for blood component messages.

4.21.3.8 BTX-8 BP Quantity (NM) 01742

Definition: This field indicates the number of blood components or commercial products to which the message refers.

4.21.3.9 BTX-9 BP Amount (NM) 01743

Definition: This field contains the amount (volume) associated with each blood component or commercial product. When included in this segment, it may be used to indicate the volume of the blood component or product that was actually transfused.

4.21.3.10 BTX-10 BP Units (CE) 01744

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
          <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
          Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the units of measure for the blood component or commercial product amount. (See Chapter 7 for more details about reporting units.) This specifies the units of measure for volume of a blood component (i.e. 50 ml) or the units of measure or dosage of a commercial product (i.e. 910 I.U. - International Units - of Factor VIII Concentrate.

4.21.3.11 BTX-11 BP Transfusion/Disposition Status (CWE) 01745

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
          <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
          Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
          System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the current status of the specified blood product as indicated by the placer. For example, the placer may return the blood product to the transfusion service unused because an IV could not be started. The blood component may have been entered, but the line was clogged and could not be used, in which case the component must be wasted. A final status would indicate that the product has actually been "transfused." Refer to *HL7 Table 0513 - Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Status* for suggested values.

HL7 Table 0513 - Blood Product Transfusion/Disposition Status

Value	Description	Comment
RA	Returned unused/no longer needed	
RL	Returned unused/keep linked to patient for possible use later	
WA	Wasted (product no longer viable)	
TX	Transfused	
TR	Transfused with adverse reaction	

4.21.3.12 BTX-12 BP Message Status (ID) 01746

Definition: The most commonly used message status values in a BTX will be preliminary and final. A status is considered preliminary until a blood product has reached a final disposition for the patient. For example, when the product is first cross-matched and a status message is sent, it would be considered preliminary. When the product is dispensed to the patient, that status would also be considered preliminary. However, once the product is transfused, the status would be considered final. The status of a blood product (BTX-11) can continue to change and the previous result should be overwritten until it reaches a final status (BTX-12). Refer to *HL7 Table 0511 – BP Observation Status Codes Interpretation* for valid entries.

4.21.3.13 BTX-13 BP Date/Time of Status (TS) 01747

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the date and time that the status of the blood component was changed. For example, if the blood component had a status of "TX" (Transfused), the date and time in this field would indicate the date and time the component was transfused by the placer system.

4.21.3.14 BTX-14 BP Transfusion Administrator (XCN) 01748

```
Components:  <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and
             Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III)
             (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^
             <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^
             <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier
             Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code
             (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^
             <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date
             (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^
             <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN):  <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
             Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
             Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD):  <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
             & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
             Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
             & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR):  <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
             <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

             Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents
```


Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original Text (ST)>

Definition: This field contains the identity of the individual who administers the transfusion of the blood product. If the code is sent as a local code, it should be unique and unambiguous. This field can be free text to permit capture without table update. In this case, the administrator's name must be recorded as the second through fourth components of the field.

4.21.3.15 BTX-15 BP Transfusion Verifier (XCN) 01749

Components: <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^ <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^ <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^ <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN): <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From Partner/Spouse (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>

Subcomponents for Name Context (CE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR): <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> & <Range End Date/Time (TS)>

Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents

Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System

```
            Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
            Text (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE):  <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
            (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
            <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding
            System Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
            <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identity of the individual who assists in the identification of the patient and verification of the product information prior to transfusion of the blood product. If the ID Number is sent as a local code, it should be unique and unambiguous. This field can be free text to permit capture without table update. In this case, the verifier's name must be recorded as the second through fourth components of the field.

4.21.3.16 BTX-16 BP Transfusion Start Date/Time of Status (TS) 01750

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the date and time that the administrator started the transfusion of the blood component or commercial product.

4.21.3.17 BTX-17 BP Transfusion End Date/Time of Status (TS) 01751

```
Components:  <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the date and time that the transfusion of the blood component or commercial product was completed or stopped.

4.21.3.18 BTX-18 BP Adverse Reaction Type (CWE) 01752

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
            <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
            Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
            System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the type of adverse reaction that the recipient of the blood product experienced. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0514 - Transfusion Adverse Reaction* for suggested values.

User-Defined Table 0514 – Transfusion Adverse Reaction

Value	Description	Comment
ABOINC	ABO Incompatible Transfusion Reaction	
ACUTHEHTR	Acute Hemolytic Transfusion Reaction	
ALLERGIC1	Allergic Reaction – First	
ALLERGIC2	Allergic Reaction – Recurrent	
ALLERGICR	Allergic Reaction – Repeating	
ANAPHYLAC	Anaphylactic Reaction	
BACTCONTAM	Reaction to Bacterial Contamination	
DELAYEDHTR	Delayed Hemolytic Transfusion Reaction	
DELAYEDSTR	Delayed Serological Transfusion Reaction	
GVHD	Graft vs Host Disease – Transfusion – Associated	
HYPOTENS	Non-hemolytic Hypotensive Reaction	
NONHTR1	Non-Hemolytic Fever Chill Transfusion	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value	Description	Comment
	Reaction – First	
NONHTR2	Non-Hemolytic Fever Chill Transfusion Reaction – Recurrent	
NONHTRREC	Non-Hemolytic Fever Chill Transfusion Reaction – Repeating	
NONIMMUNE	Non-Immune Hemolysis	
NONSPEC	Non-Specific, Non-Hemolytic Transfusion Reaction	
NORXN	No Evidence of Transfusion Reaction	
PTP	Posttransfusion Purpura	
VOLOVER	Symptoms most likely due to volume overload	

4.21.3.19 BTX-19 BP Transfusion Interrupted Reason (CWE) 01753

```
Components:  <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^
             <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate
             Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding
             System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

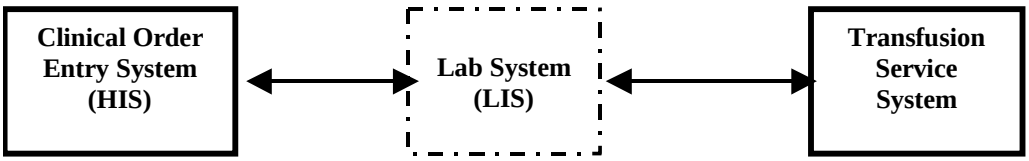
Definition: This field contains the reason that the transfusion of the blood product was interrupted. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0515 - Transfusion Interrupted Reason* for suggested values.

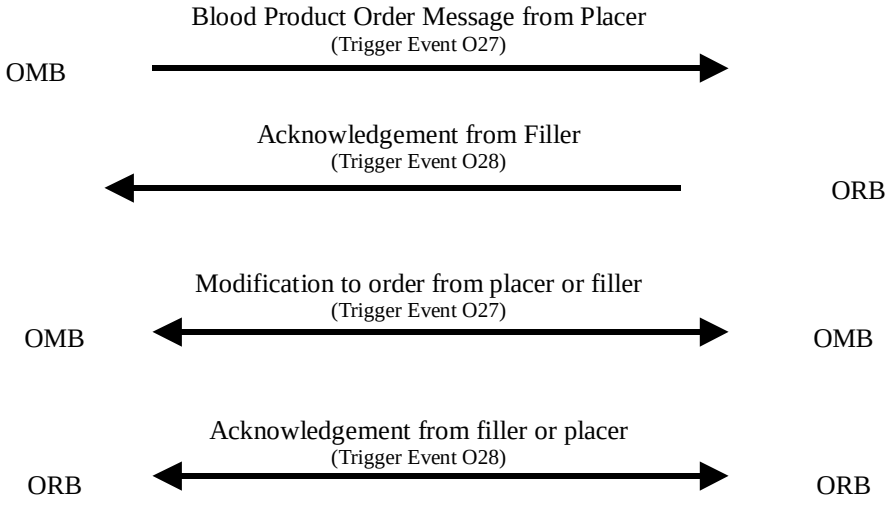
User-defined Table 0515 – Transfusion Interrupted Reason

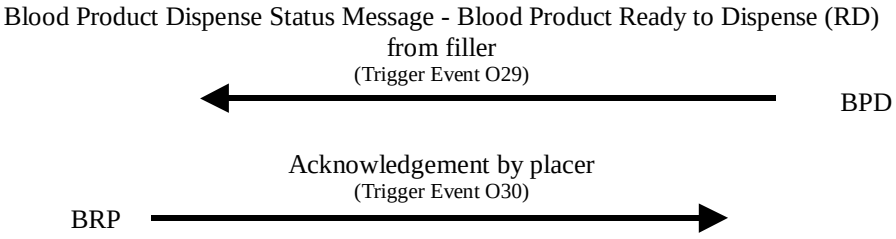
Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

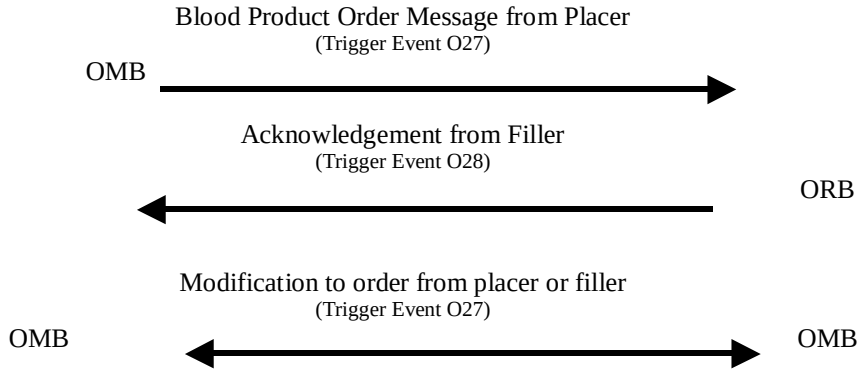
4.22 TRANSFUSION SERVICE (BLOOD BANK) TRANSACTION FLOW DIAGRAM

The following diagram depicts the message flow of the blood product messages.

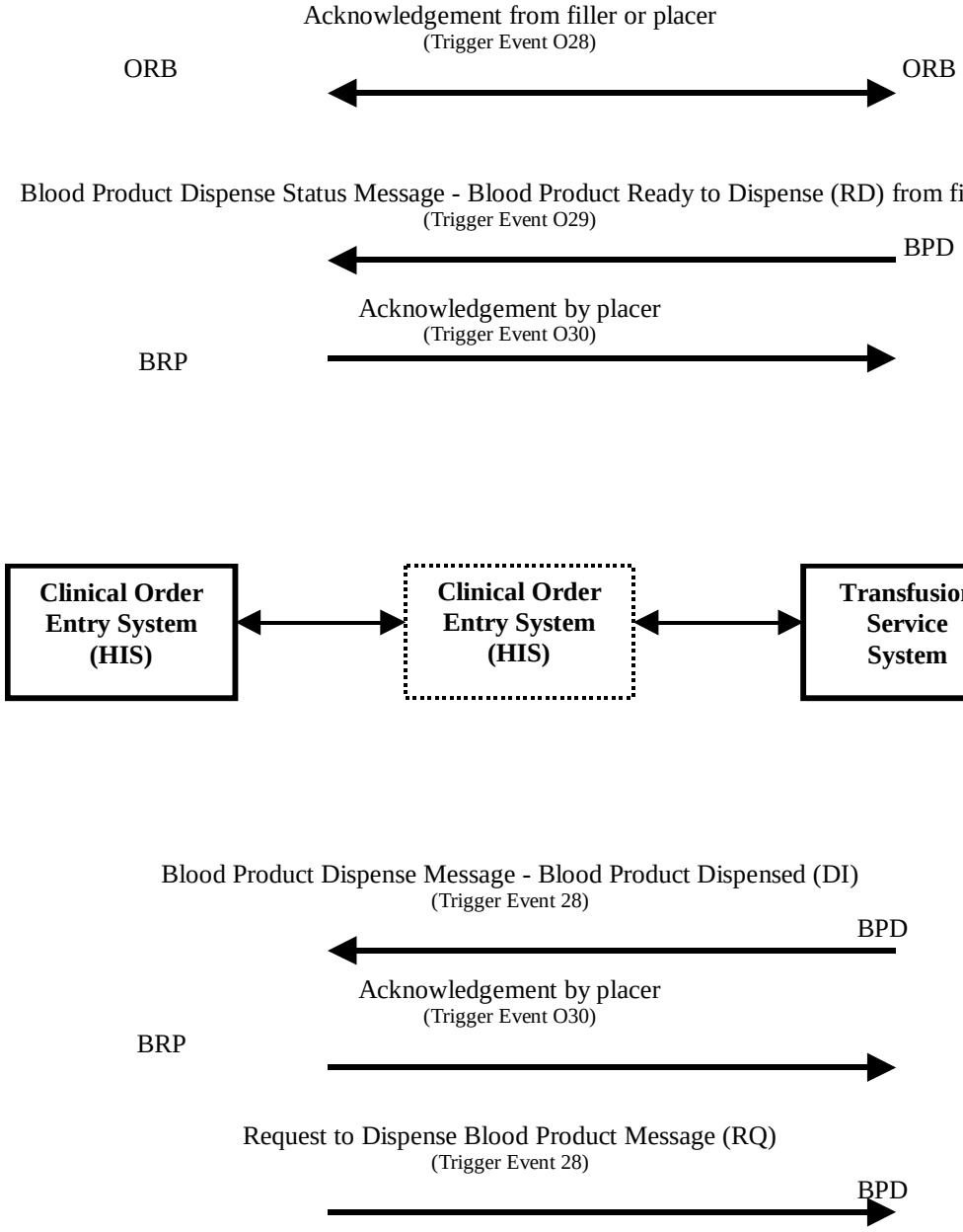


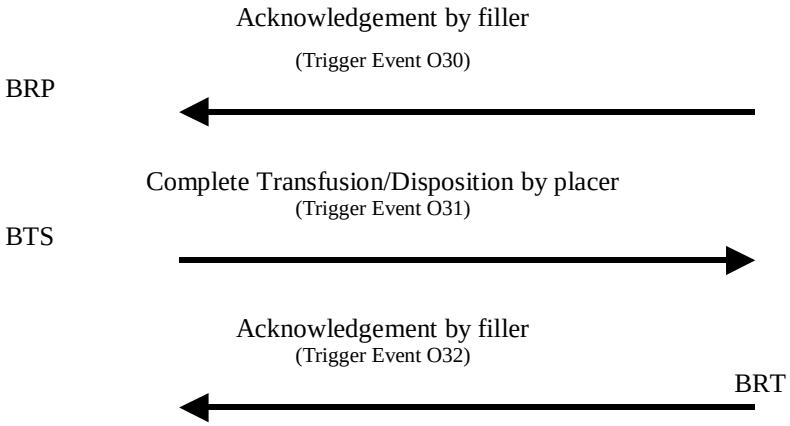






Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.


Acknowledgement from filler or placer
(Trigger Event O28)
ORB
ORB
Blood Product Dispense Status Message - Blood Product Ready to Dispense (RD) from filler
(Trigger Event O29)
BPD
Acknowledgement by placer
(Trigger Event O30)
BRP
Clinical Order Entry System (HIS)
Clinical Order Entry System (HIS)
Transfusion Service System
Blood Product Dispense Message - Blood Product Dispensed (DI)
(Trigger Event 28)
BPD
Acknowledgement by placer
(Trigger Event O30)
BRP
Request to Dispense Blood Product Message (RQ)
(Trigger Event 28)
BPD



Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

4.23 TABLES LISTINGS

4.23.1 HL7 Table 0119 - Order Control Codes

Referenced in *4.4.1.1 – Order Control Codes*

Notes:

1 The order control value field

2 "F": Values originate from the filler and are not restricted to be sent only to the placer. "P": Values originate from the placer or other application with placer privileges (as agreed in interface negotiation).

3 See table notes in section 4.5.1.1.1 for explanation of codes.

HL7 Table 0119 - Order control codes

Value[1]	Description	Event/Message Type	Originator[2]	Field Note[3]
NW	New order/service		P	l
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMD^O03^OMD_O03		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
OK	Order/service accepted & OK		F	l
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
		RRE^O12^RRE_O12		
		RRD^O14^RRD_O14		
		RRG^O16^RRG_O16		
		RRA^O18^RRA_O18		
UA	Unable to accept order/service		F	n
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
		RRE^O12^RRE_O12		
		RRD^O14^RRD_O14		
UA	Unable to accept order/service		F	n
		RRG^O16^RRG_O16		
		RRA^O18^RRA_O18		
PR	Previous Results with new order/service		P	v
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
CA	Cancel order/service request		P	a

Value[1]	Description	Event/Message Type	Originator[2]	Field Note[3]
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMD^O03^OMD_O03		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
OC	Order/service canceled		F	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RDS^O13^RDS_O13		
		RGV^O15^RGV_O15		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
CR	Canceled as requested		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
UC	Unable to cancel		F	b
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
DC	Discontinue order/service request		P	c
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMD^O03^OMD_O03		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
OD	Order/service discontinued		F	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RDS^O13^RDS_O13		
		RGV^O15^RGV_O15		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
DR	Discontinued as requested		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value[1]	Description	Event/Message Type	Originator[2]	Field Note[3]
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
UD	Unable to discontinue		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
HD	Hold order request		P	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMD^O03^OMD_O03		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
OH	Order/service held		F	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RDS^O13^RDS_O13		
		RGV^O15^RGV_O15		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
UH	Unable to put on hold		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
HR	On hold as requested		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
RL	Release previous hold		P	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMD^O03^OMD_O03		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
OE	Order/service released		F	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		

Value[1]	Description	Event/Message Type	Originator[2]	Field Note[3]
		RDS^O13^RDS_O13		
		RGV^O15^RGV_O15		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
OR	Released as requested		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
UR	Unable to release		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
RP	Order/service replace request		P	"e,d"
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
RU	Replaced unsolicited		F	"f,d"
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
RO	Replacement order		"P,F"	"g,d"
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
RQ	Replaced as requested		F	"d,e"
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
UM	Unable to replace		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
PA	Parent order/service		F	I
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value[1]	Description	Event/Message Type	Originator[2]	Field Note[3]
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RGV^O15^RGV_O15		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
		ORU^R01^ORU_R01		
CH	Child order/service		"F,P"	I
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RGV^O15^RGV_O15		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
		ORU^R01^ORU_R01		
XO	Change order/service request		P	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMD^O03^OMD_O03		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
XX	Order/service changed, unsol.		F	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RDS^O13^RDS_O13		
		RGV^O15^RGV_O15		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
UX	Unable to change		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
XR	Changed as requested		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORD^O04^ORD_O04		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
DE	Data errors		"P,F"	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		

Value[1]	Description	Event/Message Type	Originator[2]	Field Note[3]
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
		RRE^O12^RRE_O12		
		RRD^O14^RRD_O14		
		RRG^O16^RRG_O16		
		RRA^O18^RRA_O18		
RE	Observations/Performed Service to follow		"P,F"	j
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RDS^O13^RDS_O13		
		RGV^O15^RGV_O15		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
		ORU^R01^ORU_R01		
RR	Request received	ORR^O02^ORR_O02	"P,F"	k
SR	Response to send order/service status request		F	
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		OSR^Q06^OSR_Q06		
SS	Send order/service status request		P	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
SC	Status changed		"F,P"	
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
SN	Send order/service number		F	l
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
NA	Number assigned		P	l
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORG^O20^ORG_O20		
		ORS^O06^ORS_O06		
		ORN^O08^ORN_O08		
		RRE^O12^RRE_O12		
CN	Combined result	ORU^R01^ORU_R01	F	m
RF	Refill order/service request		F	o
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
AF	Order/service refill request approval		P	p
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		RRE^O12^RRE_O12		

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value[1]	Description	Event/Message Type	Originator[2]	Field Note[3]
DF	Order/service refill request denied		P	q
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
		RRE^O12^RRE_O12		
FU	Order/service refilled, unsolicited		F	r
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
OF	Order/service refilled as requested		F	s
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
UF	Unable to refill		F	t
		ORR^O02^ORR_O02		
		ORP^O10^ORP_O10		
LI	Link order/service to patient care problem or goal			u
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RDS^O13^RDS_O13		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
UN	Unlink order/service from patient care problem or goal			u
		ORM^O01^ORM_O01		
		OMG^O19^OMG_O19		
		OML^O21^OML_O21		
		OMS^O05^OMS_O05		
		OMN^O07^OMN_O07		
		OMP^O09^OMP_O09		
		RDE^O11^RDE_O11		
		RDS^O13^RDS_O13		
		RAS^O01^RAS_O01		
OP	Notification of order for outside dispense	OMP^O09^OMP_O09	P	w
PY	Notification of replacement order for outside dispense	OMP^O09^OMP_O09	P,F	w

4.23.2 HL7 Table 0292 – Vaccines administered

Referenced in 4.18.1.1 Using RXA-5 in vaccine messages

HL7 Table 0292 - Vaccines administered (code = CVX)(parenteral, unless oral is noted)

Code	Short Description	Comment / Full Vaccine Name
54	adenovirus, type 4	adenovirus vaccine, type 4, live, oral
55	adenovirus, type 7	adenovirus vaccine, type 7, live, oral
82	adenovirus, NOS[1]	adenovirus vaccine, NOS
24	anthrax	anthrax vaccine
19	BCG	Bacillus Calmette-Guerin vaccine
27	botulinum antitoxin	botulinum antitoxin
26	cholera	cholera vaccine

Code	Short Description	Comment / Full Vaccine Name
29	CMVIG	cytomegalovirus immune globulin, intravenous
56	dengue fever	dengue fever vaccine
12	diphtheria antitoxin	diphtheria antitoxin
28	DT (pediatric)	diphtheria and tetanus toxoids, adsorbed for pediatric use
20	DTaP	diphtheria, tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis vaccine
106	DTaP, 5 pertussis antigens[i]	diphtheria, tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis vaccine, 5 pertussis antigens
107	DTaP, NOS	diphtheria, tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis vaccine, NOS
50	DTaP-Hib	DTaP-Haemophilus influenzae type b conjugate vaccine
01	DTP	diphtheria, tetanus toxoids and pertussis vaccine
22	DTP-Hib	DTP-Haemophilus influenzae type b conjugate vaccine
102	DTP-Hib-Hep B	DTP- Haemophilus influenzae type b conjugate and hepatitis b vaccine
57	hantavirus	hantavirus vaccine
52	Hep A, adult	hepatitis A vaccine, adult dosage
83	Hep A, ped/adol, 2 dose	hepatitis A vaccine, pediatric/adolescent dosage, 2 dose schedule
84	Hep A, ped/adol, 3 dose	hepatitis A vaccine, pediatric/adolescent dosage, 3 dose schedule
31	Hep A, pediatric, NOS	hepatitis A vaccine, pediatric dosage, NOS
85	Hep A, NOS	hepatitis A vaccine, NOS
104	Hep A-Hep B	hepatitis A and hepatitis B vaccine
30	HBIG	hepatitis B immune globulin
08	Hep B, adolescent or pediatric	hepatitis B vaccine, pediatric or pediatric/adolescent dosage
42	Hep B, adolescent/high risk infant[2]	hepatitis B vaccine, adolescent/high risk infant dosage
43	Hep B, adult[4]	hepatitis B vaccine, adult dosage
44	Hep B, dialysis	hepatitis B vaccine, dialysis patient dosage
45	Hep B, NOS	hepatitis B vaccine, NOS
58	Hep C	hepatitis C vaccine
59	Hep E	hepatitis E vaccine
60	herpes simplex 2	herpes simplex virus, type 2 vaccine
46	Hib (PRP-D)	Haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, PRP-D conjugate
47	Hib (HbOC)	Haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, HbOC conjugate
48	Hib (PRP-T)	Haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, PRP-T conjugate
49	Hib (PRP-OMP)	Haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, PRP-OMP conjugate
17	Hib, NOS	Haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, conjugate NOS
51	Hib-Hep B	Haemophilus influenzae type b conjugate and Hepatitis B vaccine
61	HIV	human immunodeficiency virus vaccine
62	HPV	human papilloma virus vaccine
86	IG	immune globulin, intramuscular
87	IGIV	immune globulin, intravenous
14	IG, NOS	immune globulin, NOS
15	influenza, split (incl. purified surface antigen)	influenza virus vaccine, split virus (incl. purified surface antigen)
16	influenza, whole	influenza virus vaccine, whole virus
88	influenza, NOS	influenza virus vaccine, NOS
10	IPV	poliovirus vaccine, inactivated
02	OPV	poliovirus vaccine, live, oral
89	polio, NOS	poliovirus vaccine, NOS
39	Japanese encephalitis	Japanese encephalitis vaccine
63	Junin virus	Junin virus vaccine
64	leishmaniasis	leishmaniasis vaccine
65	leprosy	leprosy vaccine
66	Lyme disease	Lyme disease vaccine
03	MMR	measles, mumps and rubella virus vaccine
04	M/R	measles and rubella virus vaccine
94	MMRV	measles, mumps, rubella, and varicella virus vaccine
67	malaria	malaria vaccine

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Code	Short Description	Comment / Full Vaccine Name
05	measles	measles virus vaccine
68	melanoma	melanoma vaccine
32	meningococcal	meningococcal polysaccharide vaccine
103	meningococcal C conjugate	meningococcal C conjugate vaccine
108	meningococcal, NOS	meningococcal vaccine, NOS
07	mumps	mumps virus vaccine
69	parainfluenza-3	parainfluenza-3 virus vaccine
11	pertussis	pertussis vaccine
23	plague	plague vaccine
33	pneumococcal	pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine
100	pneumococcal conjugate	pneumococcal conjugate vaccine, polyvalent
109	pneumococcal, NOS	pneumococcal vaccine, NOS
70	Q fever	Q fever vaccine
18	rabies, intramuscular injection	rabies vaccine, for intramuscular injection
40	rabies, intradermal injection	rabies vaccine, for intradermal injection
90	rabies, NOS	rabies vaccine, NOS
72	rheumatic fever	rheumatic fever vaccine
73	Rift Valley fever	Rift Valley fever vaccine
34	RIG	rabies immune globulin
74	rotavirus	rotavirus vaccine, tetravalent, live, oral
71	RSV-IGIV	respiratory syncytial virus immune globulin, intravenous
93	RSV-MAb	respiratory syncytial virus monoclonal antibody (palivizumab), intramuscular
06	rubella	rubella virus vaccine
38	rubella/mumps	rubella and mumps virus vaccine
75	smallpox	smallpox vaccine
105	smallpox, diluted	smallpox vaccine, diluted
76	Staphylococcus bacterio lysate	Staphylococcus bacteriophage lysate
09	Td (adult)	tetanus and diphtheria toxoids, adsorbed for adult use
35	tetanus toxoid	tetanus toxoid
77	tick-borne encephalitis	tick-borne encephalitis vaccine
13	TIG	tetanus immune globulin
95	TST-OT tine test	tuberculin skin test; old tuberculin, multipuncture device
96	TST-PPD intradermal	tuberculin skin test; purified protein derivative solution, intradermal
97	TST-PPD tine test	tuberculin skin test; purified protein derivative, multipuncture device
98	TST, NOS	tuberculin skin test; NOS
78	tularemia vaccine	tularemia vaccine
25	typhoid, oral	typhoid vaccine, live, oral
41	typhoid, parenteral	typhoid vaccine, parenteral, other than acetone-killed, dried
53	typhoid, parenteral, AKD (U.S. military)	typhoid vaccine, parenteral, acetone-killed, dried (U.S. military)
101	typhoid, ViCPs	typhoid Vi capsular polysaccharide vaccine
91	typhoid, NOS	typhoid vaccine, NOS
79	vaccinia immune globulin	vaccinia immune globulin
21	Varicella	varicella virus vaccine
81	VEE, inactivated	Venezuelan equine encephalitis, inactivated
80	VEE, live	Venezuelan equine encephalitis, live, attenuated
92	VEE, NOS	Venezuelan equine encephalitis vaccine, NOS
36	VZIG	varicella zoster immune globulin
37	yellow fever	yellow fever vaccine
998	no vaccine administered	no vaccine administered
999	Unknown	unknown vaccine or immune globulin
99	RESERVED – do not use	RESERVED - do not use

Usage Notes:

NOS=not otherwise specified; avoid using NOS codes except to record historical records that lack the indicated specificity

As of August 27, 1998, Merck ceased distribution of their adolescent/high risk infant hepatitis B vaccine dosage. Code 42 should only be used to record historical records. For current administration of hepatitis B vaccine, pediatric/adolescent dosage, use code 08.

Code 99 will not be used in this table to avoid confusion with code 999.

As of September 1999, a 2-dose hepatitis B schedule for adolescents (11-15 year olds) was FDA approved for Merck's Recombivax HB® adult formulation. Use code 43 for both the 2-dose and the 3-dose schedules.

As of May 2002, the FDA approved Aventis Pasteur's DTaP vaccine Daptacel for use in the U.S. Aventis Pasteur also manufactures the DTaP vaccine Tripedia. Daptacel contains 5 pertussis antigens, while Tripedia contains 2 pertussis antigens. To distinguish between the two Aventis Pasteur DTaP vaccines, code 106 was added to represent Daptacel. Use code 106 for Daptacel and code 20 for Tripedia and other DTaP vaccines.

The codes in *HL7 Table 0292* represent the August 29, 2002 version of the content of the external code set CVX. Since vaccines may have to be added to this table more quickly than new versions of HL7 are released, this code system will be maintained by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (Contact the Chief, Systems Development Branch, National Immunization Program, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1600 Clifton Road, MS E-62, Atlanta, GA 30333; 1-800-799-7062, http://www.cdc.gov/nip/registry.) When using this code system to identify vaccines, the coding system component of the CE field should be valued as "CVX", not as "HL70292."

4.23.3 HL7 Table 0227 - Manufacturers of Vaccines (code=MVX)

Referenced in 4.18.1.2 Using RXA-17 in vaccine messages.

HL7 Table 0227 - Manufacturers of Vaccines (code=MVX)

Code	Vaccine Manufacturer/Distributor	Comment
AB	Abbott Laboratories	(includes Ross Products Division)
AD	Adams Laboratories, Inc.	
ALP	Alpha Therapeutic Corporation	
AR	Armour	[Inactive-use CEN]
AVB	Aventis Behring L.L.C.	(formerly Centeon L.L.C.; includes Armour Pharmaceutical Company)
AVI	Aviron	
BA	Baxter Healthcare Coporation]	[Inactive-use BAH
BAH	Baxter Health Corporation	(includes Hyland Immuno, Immuno International AG, and North American Vaccine, Inc.)
BAY	Bayer Corporation	(includes Miles, Inc. and Cutter Laboratories)
BP	Berna Products	[Inactive-use BPC]
BPC	Berna Products Corporation	(includes Swiss Serum and Vaccine Institute Berne)
CEN	Centeon L.L.C.	[Inactive--use AVB]
CHI	Chiron Corporation	
CMP	Celltech Medeva Pharmaceuticals	[Inactive--use PWJ]
CON	Connaught	[Inactive-use PMC]
EVN	Evans Medical Limited	[Inactive--use PWJ]
GRE	Greer Laboratories, Inc.	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Code	Vaccine Manufacturer/Distributor	Comment
IAG	Immuno International AG	[Inactive-use BAH]
IM	Merieux	[Inactive-use PMC]
IUS	Immuno-U.S., Inc.	
JPN	The Research Foundation for Microbial Diseases of Osaka University	(BIKEN)
KGC	Korea Green Cross Corporation	
LED	Lederle	[Inactive-use WAL]
MA	Massachusetts Public Health Biologic Laboratories	[Inactive-use MBL]
MBL	Massachusetts Biologic Laboratories	(formerly Massachusetts Public Health Biologic Laboratories)
MED	MedImmune, Inc.	
MIL	Miles	[Inactive-use BAY]
MIP	Bioport Corporation	(formerly Michigan Biologic Products Institute)
MSD	Merck & Co., Inc.	
NAB	NABI	(formerly North American Biologicals, Inc.)
NAV	North American Vaccine, Inc.	[Inactive-use BAH]
NOV	Novartis Pharmaceutical Corporation	(includes Ciba-Geigy Limited and Sandoz Limited)
NYB	New York Blood Center	
ORT	Ortho-Clinical Diagnostics.	(formerly Ortho Diagnostics Systems, Inc.)
OTC	Organon Teknika Corporation	
OTH	Other manufacturer	
PD	Parkedale Pharmaceuticals	(formerly Parke-Davis)
PMC	Aventis Pasteur Inc.	(formerly Pasteur Merieux Connaught; includes Connaught Laboratories and Pasteur Merieux)
PRX	Praxis Biologics	[Inactive-use WAL]
PWJ	PowerJect Pharamaceuticals	(includes Celltech Medeva Vaccines and Evans Medical Limited)
SCL	Sclavo, Inc.	
SI	Swiss Serum and Vaccine Inst.	[Inactive-use BPC]
SKB	GlaxoSmithKline	(formerly SmithKline Beecham; includes SmithKline Beecham and Glaxo Wellcome)
UNK	Unknown manufacturer	
USA	United States Army Medical Research and Material Command	
WA	Wyeth-Ayerst	[Inactive-use WAL]
WAL	Wyeth-Ayerst	(includes Weyth-Lederle Vaccines and Pediatrics, Wyeth Laboratories, Lederle Laboratories, and Praxis Biologics)

The codes in *HL7 Table 0227* represent the January 2, 2002 version of the content of the external code set MVX. Since vaccine manufacturers may have to be added to this table more quickly than new versions of HL7 are released, this code system will be maintained by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (Contact the Chief, Systems Development Branch, National Immunization Program, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1600 Clifton Road, MS E-62, Atlanta, GA 30333; 1-800-799-7062, http://www.cdc.gov/nip/registry.) When using this code system to identify vaccines, the coding system component of the CE field should be valued as "MVX", not as "HL70227."

4.23.4 HL7 Table 0495 – Body Part Modifier

For use with *HL7 Table 0550 – Body Parts*. Do not use with *HL7 Table 0163 – Body Site*.

HL7 table 0495 – Body Site Modifier

Value	Description	Comment
ANT	Anterior	
BIL	Bilateral	
DIS	Distal	
EXT	External	
LAT	Lateral	
L	Left	
LOW	Lower	
MED	Medial	
POS	Posterior	
PRO	Proximal	
LLQ	Quadrant, Left Lower	
LUQ	Quadrant, Left Upper	
RLQ	Quadrant, Right Lower	
RUQ	Quadrant, Right Upper	
R	Right	
UPP	Upper	

4.23.5 HL7 Table 0550 – Body Parts

HL7 table 0550 – Body Parts

Value	Description	Comment
ADB	Abdomen	
ACET	Acetabulum	
ACHIL	Achilles	
ADE	Adenoids	
ADR	Adrenal	
AMN	Amniotic fluid	
AMS	Amniotic Sac	
ANAL	Anal	
ANKL	Ankle	
ANTEC	Antecubital	
ANTECF	Antecubital Fossa	
ANTR	Antrum	
ANUS	Anus	
AORTA	Aorta	
AR	Aortic Rim	
AV	Aortic Valve	
APDX	Appendix	
AREO	Areola	
ARM	Arm	
ARTE	Artery	
ASCIT	Ascites	
ASCT	Ascitic Fluid	
ATR	Atrium	
AURI	Auricular	
AXI	Axilla	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value	Description	Comment
BACK	Back	
BARTD	Bartholin Duct	
BARTG	Bartholin Gland	
BRTGF	Bartholin Gland Fluid	
BPH	Basophils	
BID	Bile Duct	
BIFL	Bile fluid	
BLAD	Bladder	
BLOOD	Blood	
BLDA	Blood, Arterial	
BLDC	Blood, Capillary	
BLDV	Blood, Venous	
CBLD	Blood, Cord	
BLD	Blood, Whole	
BDY	Body, Whole	
BON	Bone	
BMAR	Bone marrow	
BOWEL	Bowel	
BOWLA	Bowel, Large	
BOWSM	Bowel, Small	
BRA	Brachial	
BRAIN	Brain	
BCYS	Brain Cyst Fluid	
BRST	Breast	
BRSTFL	Breast fluid	
BRO	Bronchial	
BROCH	Bronchiole/Bronchiolar	
BRONC	Bronchus/Bronchial	
BRV	Broviac	
BUCCA	Buccal	
BURSA	Bursa	
BURSF	Bursa Fluid	
BUTT	Buttocks	
CALF	Calf	
CANAL	Canal	
CANLI	Canaliculis	
CNL	Cannula	
CANTH	Canthus	
CDM	Cardiac Muscle	
CARO	Carotid	
CARP	Carpal	
CAVIT	Cavity	
CHE	Cavity, Chest	
CECUM	Cecum/Cecal	
CSF	Cerebral Spinal Fluid	
CVX	Cervix	
CERVUT	Cervix/Uterus	
CHEEK	Cheek	
CHES	Chest	

Value	Description	Comment
CHEST	Chest Tube	
CHIN	Chin	
CIRCU	Circumcision Site	
CLAVI	Clavicle/Clavicular	
CLITO	Clitoral	
CLIT	Clitoris	
COCCG	Coccygeal	
COCCY	Coccyx	
COLON	Colon	
COLOS	Colostomy	
COS	Colostomy Stoma	
CDUCT	Common Duct	
CONJ	Conjunctiva	
CORAL	Coral	
COR	Cord	
CORD	Cord Blood	
CORN	Cornea	
CRANE	Cranium, ethmoid	
CRANF	Cranium, frontal	
CRANO	Cranium, occipital	
CRANP	Cranium, parietal	
CRANS	Cranium, sphenoid	
CRANT	Cranium, temporal	
CUBIT	Cubitus	
CUFF	Cuff	
CULD	Cul De Sac	
CULDO	Culdocentesis	
DELT	Deltoid	
DENTA	Dental	
DEN	Dental Gingiva	
DIAF	Dialysis Fluid	
DPH	Diaphragm	
DIGIT	Digit	
DISC	Disc	
DORS	Dorsum/Dorsal	
DUFL	Duodenal Fluid	
DUODE	Duodenum/Duodenal	
DUR	Dura	
EAR	Ear	
EARBI	Ear bone, incus	
EARBM	Ear bone, malleus	
EARBS	Ear bone,stapes	
EARLO	Ear Lobe	
ELBOW	Elbow	
ELBOWJ	Elbow Joint	
ENDC	Endocardium	
EC	Endocervical	
EOLPH	endolpthamitis	
ENDM	Endometrium	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value	Description	Comment
ET	Endotracheal	
EUR	Endourethral	
EOS	Eosinophils	
EPICA	Epicardial	
EPICM	Epicardium	
EPD	Epididymis	
EPIDU	Epidural	
EPIGL	Epiglottis	
ESOPG	Esophageal	
ESO	Esophagus	
ETHMO	Ethmoid	
	External Jugular	
EYE	Eye	
BROW	Eyebrow	
EYELI	Eyelid	
FACE	Face	
FBINC	Facial bone, inferior nasal concha	
FBLAC	Facial bone, lacrimal	
FBMAX	Facial bone, maxilla	
FBNAS	Facial bone, nasal	
FBPAL	Facial bone, palatine	
FBVOM	Facial bone, vomer	
FBZYG	Facial bone, zygomatic	
FALLT	Fallopian Tube	
FEMOR	Femoral	
FMH	Femoral Head	
FEMUR	Femur	
FET	Fetus	
FIBU	Fibula	
FING	Finger	
FINGN	Finger Nail	
FOL	Follicle	
FOOT	Foot	
FOREA	Forearm	
FOREH	Forehead	
FORES	Foreskin	
FOURC	Fourchette	
GB	Gall Bladder	
GEN	Genital	
GVU	Genital - Vulva	
GENC	Genital Cervix	
GL	Genital Lesion	
GENL	Genital Lochia	
GLAND	Gland	
GLANS	Glans	
GLUTE	Gluteal	
GLUT	Gluteus	
GLUTM	Gluteus Medius	
GROIN	Groin	

Value	Description	Comment
GUM	Gum	
HAR	Hair	
HAL	Hallux	
HAND	Hand	
HEAD	Head	
HART	Heart	
HV	Heart Valve	
HVB	Heart Valve, Bicuspid	
HVT	Heart Valve, Tricuspid	
HEEL	Heel	
HEM	Hemorrhoid	
HIP	Hip	
HIPJ	Hip Joint	
HUMER	Humerus	
HYMEN	Hymen	
ILC	Ileal Conduit	
ILE	Ileal Loop	
ILEOS	Ileostomy	
ILEUM	Ileum	
ILIAC	Iliac	
ILCR	Iliac Crest	
ILCON	Ilical Conduit	
INGUI	Inguinal	
JUGI	Jugular, Internal	
INT	Intestine	
ICX	Intracervical	
INASA	Intranasal	
INTRU	Intrauterine	
INTRO	Introitus	
ISCHI	Ischium	
JAW	Jaw	
KIDN	Kidney	
KNEE	Knee	
KNEEF	Knee Fluid	
KNEEJ	Knee Joint	
LABIA	Labia	
LABMA	Labia Majora	
LABMI	Labia Minora	
LACRI	Lacrimal	
LAM	Lamella	
INSTL	Intestine, Large	
LARYN	Larynx	
LEG	Leg	
LENS	Lens	
WBC	Leukocytes	
LING	Lingual	
LINGU	Lingula	
LIP	Lip	
STOOLL	Liquid Stool	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value	Description	Comment
LIVER	Liver	
LOBE	Lobe	
LOCH	Lochia	
ISH	Loop, Ishial	
LUMBA	Lumbar	
LMN	Lumen	
LUNG	Lung	
LN	Lymph Node	
LNG	Lymph Node, Groin	
LYM	Lymphocytes	
MAC	Macrophages	
MALLE	Malleolus	
MANDI	Mandible/Mandibular	
MAR	Marrow	
MAST	Mastoid	
MAXIL	Maxilla/Maxillary	
MAXS	Maxillary Sinus	
MEATU	Meatus	
MEC	Meconium	
MEDST	Mediastinum	
MEDU	Medullary	
MOU	Membrane	
MPB	Meninges	
METAC	Metacarpal	
METAT	Metatarsal	
MILK	Milk, Breast	
MITRL	Mitral Valve	
MOLAR	Molar	
MP	Mons Pubis	
MONSU	Mons Ureteris	
MONSV	Mons Veneris(Mons Pubis)	
MOUTH	Mouth	
MRSA2	Mrsa:	
MYO	Myocardium	
NAIL	Nail	
NAILB	Nail Bed	
NAILF	Nail, Finger	
NAILT	Nail, Toe	
NARES	Nares	
NASL	Nasal	
NSS	Nasal Septum	
NLACR	Nasolacrimal	
NP	Nasopharyngeal	
NP	Nasopharynx	
NTRAC	Nasotracheal	
NAVEL	Navel	
NECK	Neck	
NERVE	Nerve	
NIPPL	Nipple	

Value	Description	Comment
NOSE	Nose	
NOS	Nose (Nasal Passage)	
NOSE	Nose(Outside)	
NOSTR	Nostril	
OCCIP	Occipital	
OLECR	Olecranon	
OMEN	Omentum	
ORBIT	Orbit/Orbital	
ORO	Oropharynx	
OSCOX	Os coxa (pelvic girdle)	
OVARY	Ovary	
PALAT	Palate	
PLATH	Palate, Hard	
PLATS	Palate, Soft	
PALM	Palm	
PANCR	Pancreas	
PAFL	Pancreatic Fluid	
PAS	Parasternal	
PARAT	Paratracheal	
PARIE	Parietal	
PARON	Paronychia	
PAROT	Parotid	
PAROT	Parotid Gland	
PATEL	Patella	
PELV	Pelvis	
PENSH	Penile Shaft	
PENIS	Penis	
PANAL	Perianal/Perirectal	
PERI	Pericardial Fluid	
PCARD	Pericardium	
PCLIT	Periclitoral	
PERIH	Perihepatic	
PNEAL	Perineal	
PERIN	Perineal Abscess	
PNEPH	Perinephric	
PNM	Perineum	
PORBI	Periorbital	
PERRA	Perirectal	
PERIS	Perisplenic	
PER	Peritoneal	
PERT	Peritoneal Fluid	
PERIT	Peritoneum	
PTONS	Peritonsillar	
PERIU	Periurethal	
PERIV	Perivesicular	
PHALA	Phalanyx	
PILO	Pilonidal	
PINNA	Pinna	
PLC	Placenta	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value	Description	Comment
PLACF	Placenta (Fetal Side)	
PLACM	Placenta (Maternal Side)	
PLANT	Plantar	
PLEUR	Pleura	
PLEU	Pleural Fluid	
PLR	Pleural Fluid (Thoracentesis Fld)	
POPLI	Popliteal	
PREAU	Preauricular	
PRERE	Prerenal	
PRST	Prostate Gland	
PROS	Prostatic Fluid	
PUBIC	Pubic	
PUL	Pulmonary Artery	
RADI	Radial	
RADIUS	Radius	
RECTL	Rectal	
RECTU	Rectum	
RBC	Red Blood Cells	
RENL	Renal	
RNP	Renal Pelvis	
RPERI	Retroperitoneal	
RIB	Rib	
SACRA	Sacral	
SACRO	Sacrococcygeal	
SACIL	Sacroiliac	
SACRU	Sacrum	
SALGL	Salivary Gland	
SCALP	Scalp	
SCAPU	Scapula/Scapular	
SCLER	Sclera	
SCROT	Scrotum/Scrotal	
SEMN	Semen	
SEM	Seminal Fluid	
SEPTU	Septum/Septal	
SEROM	Seroma	
SHIN	Shin	
SHOLJ	Sholder Joint	
SHOL	Shoulder	
SIGMO	Sigmoid	
SINUS	Sinus	
SKM	Skeletal Muscle	
SKENE	Skene's Gland	
SKULL	Skull	
INSTS	Intestine, Small	
SOLE	Sole	
SPRM	Spermatozoa	
SPHEN	Sphenoid	
SPCOR	Spinal Cord	
SPLN	Spleen	

Value	Description	Comment
STER	Sternum/Sternal	
STOM	Stoma	
USTOM	Stoma, Urinary	
STOMA	Stomach	
STUMP	Stump	
SCLV	Sub Clavian	
SDP	Subdiaphramatic	
SUB	Subdural	
SUBD	Subdural Fluid	
SGF	Subgaleal Fluid	
SUBM	Submandibular	
SUBX	Submaxillary	
SUBME	Submental	
SUBPH	Subphrenic	
SPX	Supra Cervical	
SCLAV	Supraclavicle/Supraclavicular	
SUPRA	Suprapubic	
SUPB	Suprapubic Specimen	
SWT	Sweat	
SWTG	Sweat Gland	
SYNOL	Synovial	
SYN	Synovial Fluid	
SYNOV	Synovium	
TARS	Tarsal	
TDUCT	Tear Duct	
TEAR	Tears	
TEMPL	Temple	
TEMPO	Temporal	
TML	Temporal Lobe	
TESTI	Testicle(Testis)	
THIGH	Thigh	
THORA	Thoracentesis	
THORA	Thorax/Thoracic	
THRB	Throat	
THUMB	Thumb	
TNL	Thumbnail	
THM	Thymus	
THYRD	Thyroid	
TIBIA	Tibia	
TOE	Toe	
TOEN	Toe Nail	
TONG	Tongue	
TONS	Tonsil	
TOOTH	Tooth	
TSK	Tooth Socket	
TRCHE	Trachea/Tracheal	
TBRON	Transbronchial	
TCN	Transcarina Asp	
ULNA	Ulna/Ulnar	

Health Level Seven, Version v2.5 © 2003. All rights reserved.

Value	Description	Comment
UMB	Umbilical Blood	
UMBL	Umbilicus	
UMBL	Umbilicus/Umbilical	
URET	Ureter	
URTH	Urethra	
UTERI	Uterine	
SAC	Uterine Cul/De/Sac	
UTER	Uterus	
VAGIN	Vagina/Vaginal	
VCUFF	Vaginal Cuff	
VGV	Vaginal Vault	
VAL	Valve	
VAS	Vas Deferens	
VASTL	Vastus Lateralis	
VAULT	Vault	
VEIN	Vein	
VENTG	Ventragluteal	
VCSF	Ventricular CSF	
VERMI	Vermis Cerebelli	
VERTC	Vertebra, cervical	
VERTL	Vertebra, lumbar	
VERTT	Vertebra, thoracic	
VESI	Vesicle	
VESCL	Vesicular	
VESFLD	Vesicular Fluid	
VESTI	Vestibule(Genital)	
VITR	Vitreous Fluid	
VOC	Vocal Cord	
VULVA	Vulva	
WRIST	Wrist	

4.24 OUTSTANDING ISSUES

In approving the transfusion service messages and related segments for inclusion in version 2.5, it was noted that the messages do not support information relative to DNA and/or RNA extracts of blood and/or blood products. Future consideration of this is dependent upon the development of related use cases to define requirements.